



## **DB2 Access Service User's Guide**

**DirectConnect™ for OS/390**

**12.5**

MICROSOFT WINDOWS NT and UNIX

DOCUMENT ID: 36455-01-1250-01

LAST REVISED: November 2001

Copyright © 1989-2001 by Sybase, Inc. All rights reserved.

This publication pertains to Sybase database management software and to any subsequent release until otherwise indicated in new editions or technical notes. Information in this document is subject to change without notice. The software described herein is furnished under a license agreement, and it may be used or copied only in accordance with the terms of that agreement.

To order additional documents, U.S. and Canadian customers should call Customer Fulfillment at (800) 685-8225, fax (617) 229-9845.

Customers in other countries with a U.S. license agreement may contact Customer Fulfillment via the above fax number. All other international customers should contact their Sybase subsidiary or local distributor. Upgrades are provided only at regularly scheduled software release dates. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, or translated in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, manual, optical, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Sybase, Inc.

Sybase, the Sybase logo, ADA Workbench, Adaptable Windowing Environment, Adaptive Component Architecture, Adaptive Server, Adaptive Server Anywhere, Adaptive Server Enterprise, Adaptive Server Enterprise Monitor, Adaptive Server Enterprise Replication, Adaptive Server Everywhere, Adaptive Server IQ, Adaptive Warehouse, AnswerBase, Anywhere Studio, Application Manager, AppModeler, APT Workbench, APT-Build, APT-Edit, APT-Execute, APT-FORMS, APT-Translator, APT-Library, Backup Server, ClearConnect, Client-Library, Client Services, Convoy/DM, Copernicus, Data Pipeline, Data Workbench, DataArchitect, Database Analyzer, DataExpress, DataServer, DataWindow, DB-Library, dbQueue, Developers Workbench, Direct Connect Anywhere, DirectConnect, Distribution Director, e-ADK, E-Anywhere, e-Biz Integrator, E-Whatever, EC-GATEWAY, ECMAP, ECRTIP, eFulfillment Accelerator, Embedded SQL, EMS, Enterprise Application Studio, Enterprise Client/Server, Enterprise Connect, Enterprise Data Studio, Enterprise Manager, Enterprise SQL Server Manager, Enterprise Work Architecture, Enterprise Work Designer, Enterprise Work Modeler, eProcurement Accelerator, EWA, Financial Fusion, Financial Fusion Server, Gateway Manager, ImpactNow, InfoMaker, Information Anywhere, Information Everywhere, InformationConnect, InternetBuilder, iScript, Jaguar CTS, jConnect for JDBC, KnowledgeBase, MainframeConnect, Maintenance Express, MAP, MDI Access Server, MDI Database Gateway, media.splash, MetaWorks, MySupport, Net-Gateway, Net-Library, New Era of Networks, ObjectConnect, ObjectCycle, OmniConnect, OmniSQL Access Module, OmniSQL Toolkit, Open Biz, Open Client, Open ClientConnect, Open Client/Server, Open Client/Server Interfaces, Open Gateway, Open Server, Open ServerConnect, Open Solutions, Optima++, PB-Gen, PC APT Execute, PC DB-Net, PC Net Library, Power++, power.stop, PowerAMC, PowerBuilder, PowerBuilder Foundation Class Library, PowerDesigner, PowerDimensions, PowerDynamo, PowerJ, PowerScript, PowerSite, PowerSocket, Powersoft, PowerStage, PowerStudio, PowerTips, Powersoft Portfolio, Powersoft Professional, PowerWare Desktop, PowerWare Enterprise, ProcessAnalyst, Rapport, Report Workbench, Report-Execute, Replication Agent, Replication Driver, Replication Server, Replication Server Manager, Replication Toolkit, Resource Manager, RW-DisplayLib, RW-Library, S-Designor, SDF, Secure SQL Server, Secure SQL Toolset, Security Guardian, SKILS, smart.partners, smart.parts, smart.script, SQL Advantage, SQL Anywhere, SQL Anywhere Studio, SQL Code Checker, SQL Debug, SQL Edit, SQL Edit/TPU, SQL Everywhere, SQL Modeler, SQL Remote, SQL Server, SQL Server Manager, SQL SMART, SQL Toolset, SQL Server/CFT, SQL Server/DBM, SQL Server SNMP SubAgent, SQL Station, SQLJ, STEP, SupportNow, S.W.I.F.T. Message Format Libraries, Sybase Central, Sybase Client/Server Interfaces, Sybase Financial Server, Sybase Gateways, Sybase MPP, Sybase SQL Desktop, Sybase SQL Lifecycle, Sybase SQL Workgroup, Sybase User Workbench, SybaseWare, Syber Financial, SyberAssist, SyBooks, System 10, System 11, System XI (logo), SystemTools, Tabular Data Stream, Transact-SQL, Translation Toolkit, UNIBOM, Unilib, Uninull, Unisep, Unistring, URK Runtime Kit for UniCode, Viewer, Visual Components, VisualSpeller, VisualWriter, VQL, WarehouseArchitect, Warehouse Control Center, Warehouse Studio, Warehouse WORKS, Watcom, Watcom SQL, Watcom SQL Server, Web Deployment Kit, Web.PB, Web.SQL, WebSights, WebViewer, WorkGroup SQL Server, XA-Library, XA-Server and XP Server are trademarks of Sybase, Inc. 8/01

Unicode and the Unicode Logo are registered trademarks of Unicode, Inc.

All other company and product names used herein may be trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective companies.

Use, duplication, or disclosure by the government is subject to the restrictions set forth in subparagraph (c)(1)(ii) of DFARS 52.227-7013 for the DOD and as set forth in FAR 52.227-19(a)-(d) for civilian agencies.

Sybase, Inc., 6475 Christie Avenue, Emeryville, CA 94608.

# Contents

<b>About This Book .....</b>	<b>xi</b>
<b>CHAPTER 1                      Introducing DirectConnect for OS/390 .....</b>	<b>1</b>
DirectConnect for OS/390 overview .....	1
DirectConnect architecture .....	1
DirectConnect components .....	2
Related products .....	6
DirectConnect for OS/390 environment .....	8
New features and enhancements .....	10
Secured Socket Layer (SSL) .....	10
Extensible New Limits (XNL) .....	10
Sun SNA support .....	11
Remote administration .....	11
<b>CHAPTER 2                      Creating and Configuring DB2 Access Services .....</b>	<b>13</b>
General information .....	13
Configuration file .....	14
Configuration file format .....	15
Sample configuration file .....	15
DB2 access service names .....	16
How to change configuration property values .....	17
Using DirectConnect Manager .....	17
Using the text editor .....	18
How to create additional services .....	19
Using DirectConnect Manager .....	19
Using the text editor .....	20
Configuration properties .....	20
Property categories .....	21
ACS Required properties .....	21
Code set translation .....	22
ConnectionProtocol .....	23
ConnectionSpec1 .....	23
ConnectionSpec2 .....	24

ConnectionSpec3 .....	24
DefaultClientCodeset .....	25
DefaultTargetCodeset .....	26
UseClientCharset .....	26
TPName .....	26
Catalog Stored Procedure properties.....	27
CSPCatalogQualifier .....	27
CSPDBName .....	28
CSPEclusions.....	28
CSPIncludeAlias.....	28
CSPIncludeSynonym .....	29
CSPIncludeSystem .....	29
CSPIncludeTable .....	29
CSPIncludeView.....	30
CSPQualByDBName.....	30
DatatypeInfo .....	30
SQLInformationFile .....	31
Client Interaction properties .....	32
ApplicationValidationFile .....	32
ClientDecimalSeparator .....	33
ClientIdleTimeout .....	33
EnableAtStartup .....	34
GatewayCompatible .....	34
MaxResultSize .....	35
MaxRowsReturned.....	36
MaxSvcConnections.....	36
quoted_identifier.....	37
SendWarningMessages .....	38
ServiceDescription .....	39
SvclibDescription.....	39
TextSize .....	39
TransactionMode.....	40
Version .....	40
Data Conversion Error properties .....	41
CharConvertError .....	41
DateTimeConvertError .....	41
DefaultDate .....	42
DefaultNum .....	43
DefaultTime .....	43
NumConvertError .....	43
Datatype Conversion properties.....	44
BinaryResults .....	45
DateResults.....	45
DateTimeResults.....	46

DecimalResults .....	47
FloatResults .....	48
GraphicResults .....	49
Int2Results .....	49
Int4Results .....	49
RealResults .....	50
TimeResults .....	50
XNLChar.....	51
XNLVarChar .....	51
Logging properties .....	51
LogConnectionStatistics.....	54
LogReceivedSQL .....	54
LogRequestStatistics.....	55
LogServiceStatistics .....	55
LogSvcLibStatistics .....	56
LogTargetActivity.....	57
LogTransferStatistics.....	57
LogTransformedSQL.....	58
Target Interaction properties .....	58
Allocate.....	59
APPCSecurity.....	59
PasswordRequired .....	60
QuotedStringDelimiter .....	60
SQLTransformation .....	61
StopCondition .....	61
TargetDebug .....	62
TargetDecimalSeparator .....	62
TargetHasMixedData .....	62
Tracing properties .....	63
TraceEvents .....	64
TraceHostCom .....	64
TraceInterface .....	64
TraceTarget.....	65
Transfer properties .....	65
BulkCommitCount .....	66
TransferBatch.....	67
TransferErrorCount .....	67

## CHAPTER 3

<b>Querying and Setting Operating Values .....</b>	<b>69</b>
Querying global variables.....	69
SQL transformation mode .....	69
Syntax .....	70
Issuing set statements .....	70
SQL transformation mode .....	70

	Syntax .....	70
	Querying and setting properties .....	71
	ACS (DB2 access service) required properties .....	71
	Target Interaction properties .....	72
	Client Interaction properties .....	72
	Catalog Stored Procedure properties .....	73
	Datatype Conversion properties .....	74
	Data Conversion Error properties .....	75
	Transfer properties .....	76
	Querying and setting processing values .....	76
<b>CHAPTER 4</b>	<b>Converting Datatypes .....</b>	<b>79</b>
	Converting target datatypes to Open Client/Server datatypes .....	79
	Issuing set statements to change datatype conversions .....	79
	Character representations .....	80
	Data conversion errors .....	81
	Converting Open Client/Server datatypes to target datatypes .....	83
	Data values embedded as strings .....	83
	Data values received from the client as parameters .....	84
	Datatype names .....	87
	Corresponding Open Client/Server and Adaptive Server datatypes .....	88
<b>CHAPTER 5</b>	<b>Understanding the Request Process .....</b>	<b>89</b>
	Request types .....	89
	Request processing flow .....	90
	API calls .....	91
	Managing transactions .....	92
	Request .....	92
	Unit of Work .....	92
	Transactions .....	93
	Managing processing .....	94
	MaxRowsReturned property .....	95
	StopCondition property .....	95
	Allocate property .....	95
	Effects of combined property settings on transaction behavior .....	96
	Troubleshooting .....	104
	Logging options .....	105
	Tracing options .....	105
<b>CHAPTER 6</b>	<b>Issuing SQL Statements .....</b>	<b>107</b>
	SQL transformation modes .....	107
	Description of passthrough and sybase transformation modes ...	

	108	
	Changing the transformation mode .....	111
	Command types .....	112
	Language commands .....	112
	Dynamic commands .....	113
	Cursor commands .....	117
<b>CHAPTER 7</b>	<b>Using Sybase Mode Commands.....</b>	<b>127</b>
	T-SQL commands .....	128
	alter table .....	129
	begin transaction .....	130
	commit transaction .....	131
	create index.....	131
	create table .....	132
	create view .....	134
	delete (cursor command) .....	135
	delete (dynamic command) .....	136
	delete (language command) .....	136
	drop index .....	137
	drop table .....	138
	drop view .....	138
	execute.....	139
	grant.....	139
	insert (dynamic command).....	141
	insert (language command) .....	142
	prepare transaction .....	143
	revoke .....	143
	rollback transaction .....	145
	select.....	145
	truncate table .....	147
	update (cursor command) .....	148
	update (dynamic command).....	148
	update (language command) .....	149
	use .....	150
<b>CHAPTER 8</b>	<b>Issuing Remote Procedure Calls.....</b>	<b>151</b>
	Setting up Adaptive Server and DirectConnect connections .....	152
	Creating a SQL Server stored procedure.....	152
	Configuring Adaptive Server for remote access.....	153
	Defining the DirectConnect service as a remote server.....	153
	Executing a SQL Server stored procedure .....	154
	Executing a language statement as an RPC .....	154
	Rules for using language statements as RPCs.....	156

	Creating a transfer SQL request .....	157
	Executing a transfer SQL request .....	158
	Using triggers .....	158
<b>CHAPTER 9</b>	<b>Understanding the Transfer Process.....</b>	<b>161</b>
	General description of the transfer process .....	161
	Bulk copy and destination-template transfer .....	161
	Description of terms in the transfer process.....	162
	Transfer direction .....	165
	Unit of work .....	165
	Transfer targets .....	166
	Datatype conversion for transfer processing.....	167
	Transfer errors and error handling .....	167
	Structural errors.....	167
	Value errors.....	169
	Error reporting for transfer processing .....	169
	TransferErrorCount property .....	170
<b>CHAPTER 10</b>	<b>Using Bulk Copy Transfer.....</b>	<b>171</b>
	General description of bulk copy transfer.....	171
	General rules for bulk copy transfer .....	171
	Syntax for bulk copy transfer statements .....	172
	Examples.....	173
	Processing bulk copy “transfer from” statements.....	175
	Datatype conversion for “transfer from” processing .....	176
	Processing bulk copy “transfer to” statements .....	177
	Datatype conversion for “transfer to” processing .....	178
	Authorization for transfer to a Adaptive Server .....	180
	Process flow of bulk copy transfer statements.....	180
	Guidelines for processing.....	182
	Datatype error conditions .....	183
	Character datatype errors .....	184
	Numeric datatype errors.....	186
	Date datatype errors.....	188
	Binary datatype errors .....	188
<b>CHAPTER 11</b>	<b>Using Destination-Template Transfer .....</b>	<b>191</b>
	General description of destination-template transfer .....	191
	Syntax for destination-template transfer statements.....	192
	Destination-template datatype qualifiers .....	194
	Special date and time qualifiers .....	197
	Examples.....	198



	Processing destination-template “transfer from” statements.....	200
	Processing destination-template “transfer to” statements.....	202
<b>CHAPTER 12</b>	<b>Accessing Catalog Information with CSPs.....</b>	<b>205</b>
	General information.....	205
	Why use CSPs .....	206
	CSP properties .....	206
	CSP set statements.....	206
	How the DB2 access service assembles stored procedure information.....	206
	Supported CSPs.....	207
	Coding instructions.....	208
	Parameters .....	208
	Syntax .....	208
	Coding examples.....	208
	Table name, owner, and qualifier parameters.....	209
	sp_capabilities.....	211
	sp_column_privileges.....	213
	sp_columns.....	215
	sp_databases.....	218
	sp_datatype_info.....	219
	sp_fkeys.....	222
	sp_pkeys.....	224
	sp_server_info.....	225
	sp_special_columns.....	226
	sp_sproc_columns.....	228
	sp_statistics.....	230
	sp_stored_procedures.....	233
	sp_table_privileges .....	234
	sp_tables.....	236
<b>CHAPTER 13</b>	<b>Retrieving Information with System Procedures .....</b>	<b>239</b>
	sp_capabilities.....	239
	sp_groups .....	242
	sp_helpserver.....	242
	sp_password .....	243
	sp_sqlgetinfo .....	245
<b>CHAPTER 14</b>	<b>RSPs and Host-Resident Requests.....</b>	<b>247</b>
	Creating RSPs .....	247
	Executing remote stored procedures .....	248
	In passthrough mode.....	248

	In sybase mode .....	249
	Creating host-resident requests .....	250
	In passthrough mode.....	250
	In sybase mode .....	250
	Executing host-resident requests .....	251
	In passthrough mode.....	251
	In sybase mode .....	251
	Variables in host-resident requests .....	252
	Deleting host-resident requests .....	252
	In passthrough mode.....	252
	In sybase mode .....	253
APPENDIX A	<b>Configuration References and Code Set Tables .....</b>	<b>255</b>
	Configuration properties.....	255
	Code set reference tables .....	258
	Values for DefaultClientCodeset .....	258
	Values for DefaultTargetCodeset .....	260
APPENDIX B	<b>Compatibility with MDI Database Gateways and Net-Gateway .....</b>	<b>263</b>
	Compatibility with MDI Database Gateways .....	263
	Compatibility with Net-Gateway .....	263
	<b>Glossary .....</b>	<b>267</b>
	<b>Index .....</b>	<b>279</b>

# About This Book

This guide describes how to configure and use a DirectConnect™ for OS/390 access service, including information about access service configuration properties, datatype conversion, request processing, data transfer, and stored procedures.

This guide also provides information about compatibility with MDI Database Gateways.

## Audience

This book is written for:

- Application Programmers, who develop organization-specific programs using the major features of DirectConnect.
- System Administrators, who install and test DirectConnect. When DirectConnect is running, System Administrators provide ongoing administration support, disaster recovery, and troubleshooting support.
- System Programmers, who install and test DirectConnect. System Programmers also provide product administration, troubleshooting, and disaster recovery.

## How to use this book

The following table shows how this book is organized.

See	To
Chapter 1, “Introducing DirectConnect for OS/390”	Learn about DirectConnect for OS/390 and the access services.
Chapter 2, “Creating and Configuring DB2 Access Services”	Configure the Access Service Library and DB2 access service properties.
Chapter 3, “Querying and Setting Operating Values”	Use global variables and <code>set</code> statements to query and set operating values for your client connections.
Chapter 4, “Converting Datatypes”	Review datatype conversions between DB2 UDB and Open Client/Server.
Chapter 5, “Understanding the Request Process”	Begin the SQL request process.

---

See	To
Chapter 6, “Issuing SQL Statements”	Review SQL transformation modes and cursor, dynamic, and language commands.
Chapter 7, “Using Sybase Mode Commands”	Issue structured query language (SQL) commands that an access service recognizes and acts upon when the SQL transformation mode is set to sybase mode.
Chapter 8, “Issuing Remote Procedure Calls”	Issue SQL Server remote procedure calls (RPCs) that initiate events in remote databases.
Chapter 9, “Understanding the Transfer Process”	Review the transfer process, including transfer targets, datatype conversion for transfer processing, errors and error handling, and backward compatibility.
Chapter 10, “Using Bulk Copy Transfer”	Use bulk copy transfer to transfer data.
Chapter 11, “Using Destination-Template Transfer”	Use destination-template transfer to transfer data.
Chapter 12, “Accessing Catalog Information with CSPs”	Obtain information about database objects, you need to access the database catalog. Catalog Stored Procedures (CSPs) provide this catalog access. This chapter describes how to use CSPs to access the DB2 UDB catalog.
Chapter 13, “Retrieving Information with System Procedures”	Use system procedures.
Chapter 14, “RSPs and Host-Resident Requests”	Create, execute, and delete remote stored procedures (RSPs) and host-resident requests.
Appendix A, “Configuration References and Code Set Tables”	Access a synopsis of configuration properties and and code set identifiers, and how they interact in transaction management.
Appendix B, “Compatibility with MDI Database Gateways and Net-Gateway”	Provides information regarding the compatibility between DirectConnect and both the MDI Database Gateways and Net_Gateway.

**Related documents**

To install DirectConnect products and DirectConnect Manager, use the DirectConnect *Installation Guide* for OS/390.

To configure and administer DirectConnect server, use the DirectConnect *Server Administration Guide*.

To configure and administer the DirectConnect Transaction Router Service Library (TRS) and to administer Mainframe Client Connect, use the DirectConnect *Transaction Router Service User's Guide*.

To install and administer the other Mainframe Connect Integrated Product Set (IPS) products, use the following documents:

For explanations of DirectConnect error messages, see the DirectConnect *Error Message Guide*.

For additional references, use the following documents:

- MainframeConnect *Installation and Administration Guide* for DB2 UDB
- Open ServerConnect *Installation and Administration Guide* for CICS
- Open ServerConnect *Installation and Administration Guide* for IBM IMS TM and MVS
- Open ServerConnect *Programmer's Guide* for Remote Stored Procedures
- Open ClientConnect *Installation and Administration* for CICS
- Open ClientConnect *Installation and Administration Guide* for IBM IMS TM and MVS
- Open ClientConnect *Programmer's Guide* for Client Services Applications
- Open Client and Open Server *Common Libraries Reference Manual*
- Open Client *Client-Library/C Programmer's Guide*
- Open Client *Client-Library/C Reference Manual*
- Open Client *DB-Library/C Reference Manual*
- Open Server *Server-Library/C Reference Manual*

**Other sources of information**

Use the Sybase Technical Library CD and the Technical Library Product Manuals Web site to learn more about your product:

- Technical Library CD contains product manuals and is included with your software. The DynaText browser (downloadable from Product Manuals at <http://www.sybase.com/detail/1,3693,1010661,00.html>) allows you to access technical information about your product in an easy-to-use format.

---

Refer to the *Technical Library Installation Guide* in your documentation package for instructions on installing and starting the Technical Library.

- Technical Library Product Manuals Web site is an HTML version of the Technical Library CD that you can access using a standard Web browser. In addition to product manuals, you will find links to the Technical Documents Web site (formerly known as Tech Info Library), the Solved Cases page, and Sybase/Powersoft newsgroups.

To access the Technical Library Product Manuals Web site, go to Product Manuals at <http://www.sybase.com/support/manuals/>.

## **Sybase certifications on the Web**

Technical documentation at the Sybase Web site is updated frequently.

### **❖ For the latest information on product certifications**

- 1 Point your Web browser to Technical Documents at <http://www.sybase.com/support/techdocs/>.
- 2 Select Products from the navigation bar on the left.
- 3 Select a product name from the product list.
- 4 Select the Certification Report filter, specify a time frame, and click Go.
- 5 Click a Certification Report title to display the report.

### **❖ For the latest information on EBFs and Updates**

- 1 Point your Web browser to Technical Documents at <http://www.sybase.com/support/techdocs/>.
- 2 Select EBFs/Updates. Enter user name and password information, if prompted (for existing Web accounts) or create a new account (a free service).
- 3 Specify a time frame and click Go.
- 4 Select a product.
- 5 Click an EBF/Update title to display the report.

### **❖ To create a personalized view of the Sybase Web site (including support pages)**

Set up a MySybase profile. MySybase is a free service that allows you to create a personalized view of Sybase Web pages.

- 1 Point your Web browser to Technical Documents at <http://www.sybase.com/support/techdocs/>

2 Click MySybase and create a MySybase profile.

## Style conventions

This book uses the following style conventions:

This type of information	Looks like this
Gateway–Library function names	TDINIT, TDCANCEL
Client–Library function names	CTBINIT, CTBCANCEL
Other executables (DB–Library routines, SQL commands) in text	the dbrpcparam routine, a select statement
Directory names, path names, and file names	<i>/usr/bin directory, interfaces file</i>
Variables	<i>n</i> bytes
SQL Server datatypes	datetime, float
Sample code	01 BUFFER PIC S9(9) COMP SYNC
User input	01 BUFFER PIC X( <i>n</i> )
Client–Library and Gateway–Library function argument names	BUFFER, RETCODE
Names of objects stored on the mainframe	SYCTSAA5
Symbolic values used with function arguments, properties, and structure fields	CS_UNUSED, FMT_NAME, CS_SV_FATAL
Client–Library property names	CS_PASSWORD, CS_USERNAME
Client–Library and Gateway–Library datatypes	CS_CHAR, TDSCHAR

All other names and terms are in regular typeface.

## Syntax conventions

Syntax statements that display options for a command look like this:

```
sp_columns table_name [, table_owner]
           [, table_qualifier] [, column_name]
```

---

The following table explains the syntax conventions used in this guide.

Symbol	Convention
( )	Parentheses are part of the command.
{ }	Braces indicate that you must choose at least one of the enclosed options. Do not type the braces when you type the option.
[ ]	Brackets indicate that you can choose one or more of the enclosed options, or none. Do not type the brackets when you type the options.
	The vertical bar indicates that you can select only one of the options shown. Do not type the bar in your command.
,	The comma indicates that you can choose one or more of the options shown. Separate each choice by using a comma as part of the command.

### **If you need help**

Each Sybase installation that has purchased a support contract has one or more designated people who are authorized to contact Sybase Technical Support. If you cannot resolve a problem using the manuals or online help, please have the designated person contact Sybase Technical Support or the Sybase subsidiary in your area.



# Introducing DirectConnect for OS/390

This chapter provides an overview of DirectConnect for OS/390. DirectConnect for OS/390 when combined with other Sybase products, provides access and integration of mainframe data. For more information about other Sybase products, see the *Overview Guide* for Mainframe Connect.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
DirectConnect for OS/390 overview	1
DirectConnect for OS/390 environment	8
New features and enhancements	10

## DirectConnect for OS/390 overview

This section describes DirectConnect for OS/390 and other Sybase products that DirectConnect interacts with. This section covers the following topics:

- DirectConnect architecture
- DirectConnect components
- Related products

## DirectConnect architecture

DirectConnect is Open Server-based software that supports Database-Library (DB-Library), Client-Library (CT-Library), and Open Database Connectivity (ODBC) application programming interfaces (APIs).

DirectConnect serves as a fundamental building block for highly-scalable database middleware applications. DirectConnect products are local area network (LAN)-based middleware gateways and servers that provide access to non-Sybase data and applications.

In addition, DirectConnect can be used with other Sybase products, such as ASE/CIS, Sybase Adaptive Server, and Replication Server.

DirectConnect for OS/390 consists of:

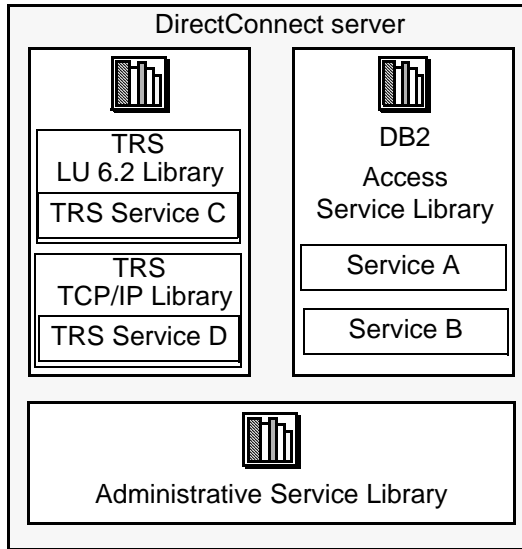
- A server, which provides the framework in which service libraries can operate
- One or more service libraries (DB2 UDB and TRS), which provide the framework in which access services can operate
- One or more access services for each service library (DB2 UDB and TRS), which are the logical points of connection for DirectConnect clients.

The following subsections describe each of these components.

## **DirectConnect components**

This section describes the following DirectConnect components:

- DirectConnect server
- DirectConnect service libraries
- DirectConnect access services
- Mainframe Client Connect

**Figure 1-1: DirectConnect server, service libraries, and services**

## DirectConnect server

The DirectConnect server provides management and support functions for DirectConnect service libraries, such as:

- Routing client connections to the appropriate access service based on user ID, requesting application, and access service name.
- Providing a single log file for access services. TRS has its own Tabular Data Stream (TDS) trace file, LU 6.2 protocol trace file, and TCP/IP protocol trace file.
- Logging server, access service, and client messages.
- Tracing server, access service, and client events.
- Providing configuration management of all installed services.

For detailed information about configuring and starting the server, see the *DirectConnect Server Administration Guide*.

## **DirectConnect service libraries**

Residing on the DirectConnect server, a service library is a set of configuration properties that describes how its access services will function. The following service libraries reside on the DirectConnect server:

- Access Service Library
- Transaction Router Service Library
- Administrative Service Library

## **DirectConnect access services**

An access service is the client connection point for a DirectConnect server. It is the pairing of a service library with a set of specific values for the configuration properties.

### **DB2 UDB access services**

A DB2 access service works with MainframeConnect for DB2 UDB to allow clients to access DB2 data in a DB2 UDB database.

Each DB2 access service is a specific set of configuration properties that perform the following:

- Transform SQL
- Convert datatypes
- Support RPCs
- Transfer data between DB2 UDB and other servers accessible through Open Client
- Support Catalog Stored Procedures (CSPs) and system stored procedures
- Support RSPs and host-resident requests

### **Transaction Router Service (TRS)**

Each TRS library contains a TRS that provides access to DB2 data and supports Open ServerConnect mainframe applications, defined to TRS as Remote Procedure Calls (RPCs).

TRS routes requests from remote LAN-based clients to Open ServerConnect transactions. Optionally, it can also route requests to MainframeConnect for DB2 UDB and return results to the client.

Having multiple instances of a TRS library on a server results in different physical copies of the dynamic link library or shared library files that constitute the TRS component.

Security can also be configured on a transaction or user basis.

There are two TRS libraries:

- *TRSLU62* service library, which uses the LU 6.2 communications protocol to talk to Mainframe Connect or to any Open ServerConnect application running in CICS.
- *TRSTCP* service library, which uses the Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) communications protocol to talk to MainframeConnect or any Open ServerConnect application running in CICS.

Having multiple instances of a TRS library on a server results in different physical copies of the shared library files that constitute the TRS component.

For an explanation of the TRS components of DirectConnect, see the *DirectConnect Transaction Router Service User's Guide*.

### **Administrative service library**

The Administrative service library provides specific administrative services for all DirectConnect libraries, including writing to logs and allowing remote configuration of DirectConnect access services (for example, through DirectConnect Manager).

### **DirectConnect Manager**

DirectConnect Manager is a graphical user interface (GUI) systems management tool for administering DirectConnect. DirectConnect Manager runs only on Windows NT or Windows 2000, and provides the following capabilities:

- Manage DirectConnect servers on multiple platforms.
- Change configuration properties of DirectConnect servers, service libraries, and access services.
- Create and copy access services.
- Create new servers using DCDirector.
- Start and stop existing servers using DCDirector.

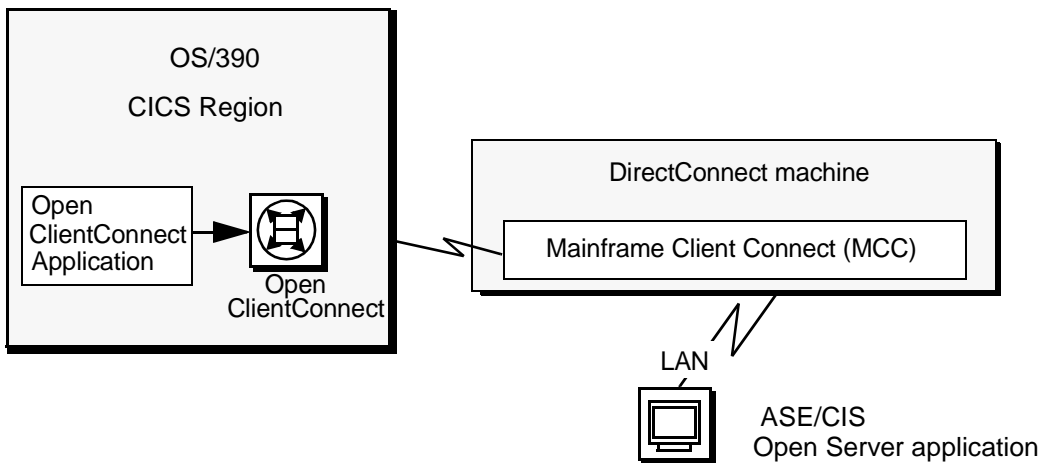
- Start, stop, and delete services.
- Test the availability of a data source by creating a connection to it.
- Retrieve a DirectConnect server log file or a subset of the log, and view log file messages with a text editor.
- Update DirectConnect server connection information.
- View the status of a service and data source on the desktop.

## Mainframe Client Connect

Mainframe Client Connect (MCC) is a LAN-based program that lets mainframe Open ClientConnect applications act as clients to LAN servers using the SNA / LU 6.2 network protocol. See the following figure.

Because TCP/IP access to LAN servers is built into Open ClientConnect, MCC is neither available nor needed, because you go directly to your target database.

**Figure 1-2: Mainframe Client Connect**



For a description of the Mainframe Client components of DirectConnect, see the *Transaction Router Service User's Guide*.

## Related products

This section describes products that DirectConnect interacts with to provide mainframe access for LAN client requests.

## MainframeConnect for DB2 UDB

MainframeConnect for DB2 UDB is a CICS transaction that works with DirectConnect for OS/390 to provide access to mainframe data. It performs the following functions:

- Supports full read-write, dynamic SQL access to data
- Allows applications to use cursors for flexible and efficient result set processing
- Permits the use of long-running transactions against mainframe databases
- Allows applications to use dynamic events to map SQL to a static plan

DirectConnect invokes Mainframe Connect for DB2 UDB to access mainframe data on behalf of its Open Client-based clients, such as:

- ASE/CIS
- Adaptive Server through remote procedure calls (RPCs)
- Enterprise Application Server
- JDBC or ODBC applications
- Replication Server

---

**Note** MainframeConnect for DB2 UDB is available only for MVS-CICS environments.

---

## Open ServerConnect

Open ServerConnect is a programming environment that lets you create mainframe transactions that Sybase client applications can access. To provide this access, Open ServerConnect uses the following basic interfaces:

- Traditional Open Server programming environment (for new customers and Sybase-heritage customers using new applications)
- Remote Stored Procedure (RSP) programming environment (only for MDI-heritage customers)

These mainframe transactions provide access to virtually any OS/390 data source and are used for a variety of functions, including:

- Accessing existing mainframe applications
- Initiating mainframe batch jobs

- Providing source data for data transfer operations
- Providing data mapped to a table within the CIS functionality in ASE/CIS (formerly OmniConnect), thus allowing results to be accessed or joined with data from other targets

LAN-side client applications access Open ServerConnect transactions directly through DirectConnect or indirectly through ASE/CIS, or through a Sybase Adaptive Server RPC.

## **Open ClientConnect**

Open ClientConnect is a programming environment that lets you create mainframe applications that access:

- LAN data residing on an Adaptive Server or other supported data sources
- Other CICS regions
- Mainframe Client Connect

It allows you to treat the mainframe as just another node on a LAN.

Open ClientConnect uses the following APIs:

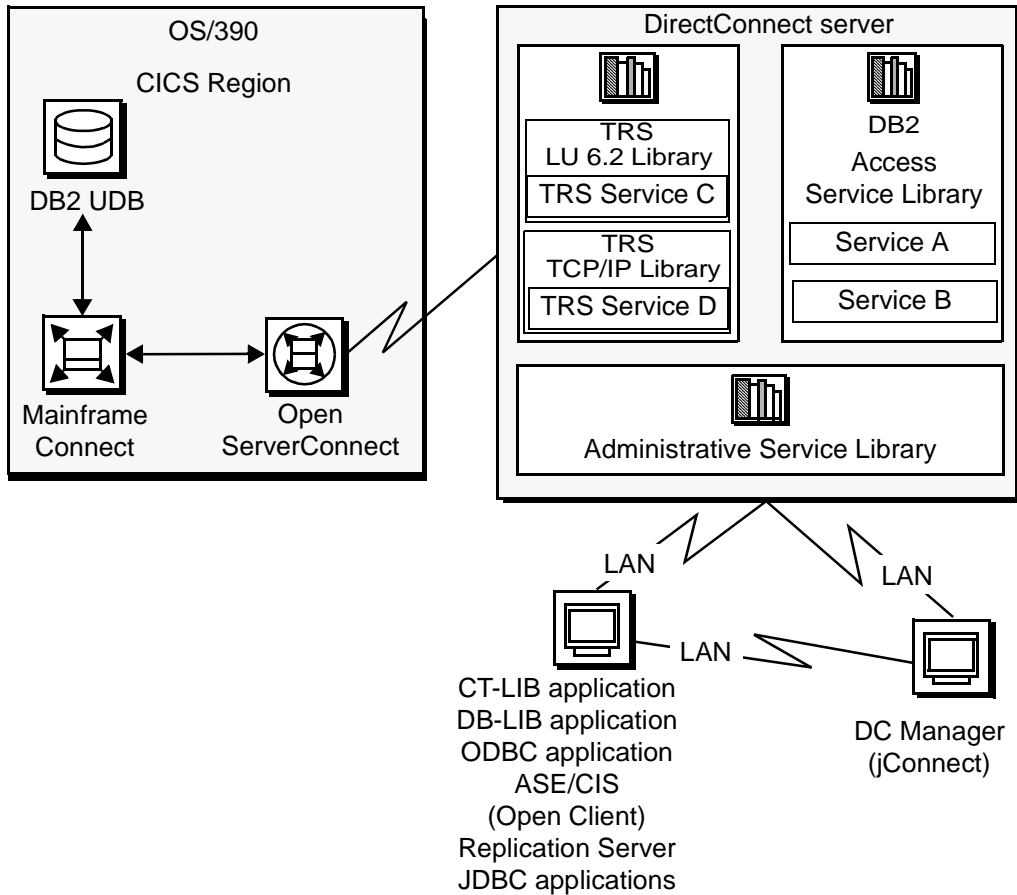
- Traditional Open Client programming environment (for new customers and Sybase-heritage customers using new applications)
- Client Services Application (CSA) programming environment (only for MDI-heritage customers)

## **DirectConnect for OS/390 environment**

DirectConnect for OS/390 consists of a server and one or more service libraries. The server provides the framework in which the service libraries operate. DirectConnect for DB2 Access Service Library is the program component of DirectConnect for OS/390 that works with MainframeConnect for DB2 UDB to access DB2 data.

The following figure shows the relationship of the DB2 Access Service Library with components of the client workstation, LAN, and mainframe environments.



**Figure 1-3: DirectConnect for OS/390 environment**

As shown, the request from a client application uses the LAN to communicate with the DirectConnect server. From there, either TRS or a DB2 access service routes the request to the appropriate CICS region. Then the request accesses data on the DB2 UDB database.

For more information on how to create multiple TRS libraries, see the *DirectConnect Transaction Router User's Guide*.

## New features and enhancements

A complete list of all the enhancements for version 12.5 is available in the DirectConnect *Release Bulletin for OS/390* and in the DirectConnect *Installation Guide for OS/390*. This section lists the changes and additional features that are covered in this guide.

### Secured Socket Layer (SSL)

DirectConnect supports Secure Socket Layer (SSL) to provide customers with a secure mode of data transport. SSL provides:

- Encryption of data before it is sent over the network.
- Authentication of clients or servers through the use of digital certificates.

To support SSL for a TRS service, new configuration properties have been added to the DirectConnect server configuration properties. For a complete description of the new properties refer to the DirectConnect *Server Administration Guide*.

For additional information and issues relating to SSL, refer to the DirectConnect *Installation Guide* for OS/390.

### Extensible New Limits (XNL)

DirectConnect supports extending several size limitations:

- Char, varchar, binary and varbinary datatypes are now limited by the back end database maximum.
- RPCs and parameters to stored procedures will no longer have a limit of 255 bytes but are limited to a back end database maximum size for columns of the same datatype.
- The previous table limit of 250 columns is now limited by the back end database.
- The total width of an index is increased to the limits of the back end database.
- An increase in the number of parameters that DirectConnect sends to a stored procedure.

To provide the extended limits and to designate the maximum size for the results, there are two new Datatype Conversion configuration properties:

- XNLChar
- XNLVarChar

For the description, syntax, values and defaults for the properties, refer to the Datatype Conversion configuration category in Chapter 2, “Creating and Configuring DB2 Access Services.”

## Sun SNA support

On Solaris, DirectConnect supports SNA-IX for LU 6.2 connections. There is no longer support for SunLink or Brixton

## Remote administration

DirectConnect now provides the ability to administer multiple DirectConnect servers and access services running remotely, on multiple machines, from a single centralized location. The client application that performs this function is DirectConnect Manager. To allow you to remotely administer DirectConnect, servers a new hierarchical layer using a DCDirector server has been created. For a description of the new hierarchy, refer to the *DirectConnect Server Administration Guide*.

## DirectConnect Manager added functionality

DirectConnect Manager now provides the ability to:

- Start, stop, and delete access services. (From a remote site, DirectConnect Manager is the only way you can start an access service.)
- Create new servers using DCDirector.
- Start and stop existing servers using DCDirector.



# Creating and Configuring DB2 Access Services

This chapter describes how to configure properties to customize the DB2 Access Service Library and individual DB2 access services.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
General information	13
Configuration file	14
How to change configuration property values	17
How to create additional services	19
Configuration properties	20
ACS Required properties	21
Catalog Stored Procedure properties	27
Client Interaction properties	32
Data Conversion Error properties	41
Datatype Conversion properties	44
Logging properties	51
Target Interaction properties	58
Tracing properties	63
Transfer properties	65

Appendix A contains a quick reference for the configuration properties.

## General information

---

**Note** For this document, all references to the DB2 UDB access service will be referred to simply as the DB2 access service.

---

You change existing properties and create DB2 access services in either of the following ways:

- Using DirectConnect Manager.

If you use DirectConnect Manager, which is supported on Windows NT and Windows 2000, you can configure DB2 access service properties and dynamically change many properties without stopping and starting the server. DirectConnect Manager is easier to use, provides you with a GUI interface and performs error checking. For information about using DirectConnect Manager, see the DirectConnect Manager online help. For UNIX users, you must use a Windows NT or Windows 2000 environment for DirectConnect Manager functionality.

- Manually editing the DB2 Access Service Library configuration file that resides on the DirectConnect server.

If you edit the configuration file, you must stop and restart the server for the changes to take effect. The instructions in this chapter describe how to edit the DB2 Access Service Library configuration file.

The DB2 Access Service Library uses some configuration information from the server. For instructions about configuring DirectConnect server properties, see the *DirectConnect Server Administration Guide*.

## Configuration file

---

**Note** Sybase recommends you use DirectConnect Manager to configure the DB2 Access Service Library, modify configuration property values, and create DB2 access services. Using DirectConnect Manager allows you to make changes dynamically without restarting the server, is easier to use, and provides error checking for the input data.

---

To configure the DB2 Access Service Library and create and modify DB2 access services you must use the DB2 Access Service Library configuration file. It is a simple text file named *db2.cfg*. Use your text editor to change any DB2 access service property, then save the configuration file. To find the location of this file within the DirectConnect directory structure, see the DirectConnect OS/390 Installation Guide for your platform.

Each DB2 access service has a specific set of configuration properties. To configure a DB2 access service, enter site-specific values for all required properties. When you make changes to DB2 access service properties that are not required, enter only the values that differ from the default values.

## Configuration file format

A service library configuration file consists of:

- A primary section [*Service Library*] that groups DB2 Access Service Library properties. The name is hard-coded and cannot be changed.
- Access service sections [*Service Name*], shown in brackets.
- Subsections {*Subsection Name*}, shown in braces. Subsections group the properties by type.
- Configuration properties and values.

You can include comments. Each comment must be on a separate line and begin with a semicolon (;) or crosshatch (#) in column one.

## Sample configuration file

Following is an example of two DB2 Access Service Library configuration files:

```
[Service Library]
{Logging}
LogSvclibStatistics=60

#The configuration for the first service
[ServiceA]
{ACS Required}
ConnectionProtocol=lu62
ConnectionSpec1=LOCALA
ConnectionSpec2=BLANCO
ConnectionSpec3=QPCSUPP
DefaultClientCodeset=850
DefaultTargetCodeset=500
UseClientCharset=yes
TPName=AMD2

{Client Interaction}
```

```
EnableAtStartup=yes

{Logging}
LogReceivedSQL=yes

#The configuration for the second service
[ServiceB]
{ACS Required}
ConnectionProtocol=lu62
ConnectionSpec1=LOCALB
ConnectionSpec2=BLANCO
ConnectionSpec3=QPCSUPP
DefaultClientCodeset=850
DefaultClientCodeset
DefaultTargetCodeset=500
UseClientCharset=yes
TPName=AMD2

{Client Interaction}
EnableAtStartup=yes

{Datatype Conversion}
DateTimeResults=char_iso

{Logging}
LogReceivedSQL=yes
LogTransformedSQL=yes
```

## DB2 access service names

As shown in the previous example, access service names must conform to the following rules:

- Access service names must be unique (without regard to case).
- Access service names must not exceed 31 characters in length for Windows NT or UNIX operating systems.
- The initial character must be an alphabetic character (a–z, A–Z).
- Subsequent characters can be alphabetic characters, numbers, or the underscore (\_) character.



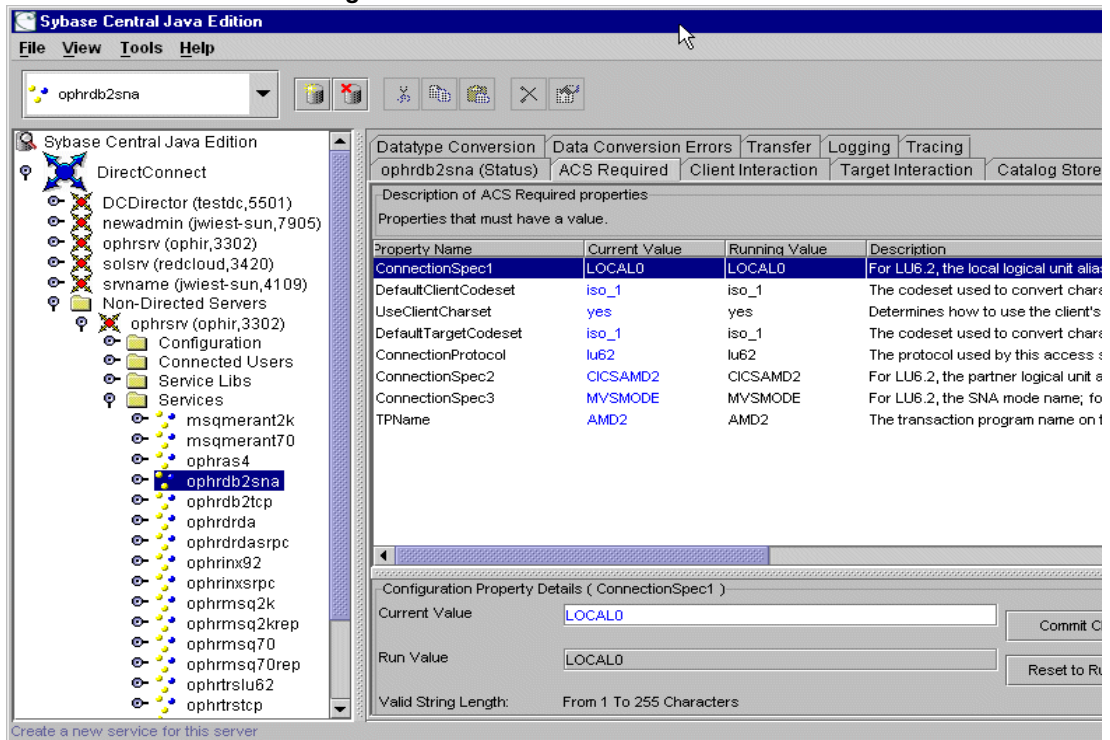
## How to change configuration property values

Although most access service configuration property values have default values, you will need to change some configuration property values for your site. You can change property values either by using DirectConnect Manager or by editing the text file.

### Using DirectConnect Manager

To use DirectConnect Manager to edit the access service configuration file, select the tab at the top of the window that matches the category of properties that you are going to update. After updating the selected category, repeat this process for all of the categories until you have completed updating all of the properties. Follow the procedure outlined for the ACS Required configuration properties:

**Figure 2-1: Editing the DB2 access service using DirectConnect Manager**



- 1 Start up DirectConnect manager.
- 2 Double-click the server name.
- 3 Double-click the access service name.
- 4 Click the ACS Required configuration property category tab.  
The ACS Required configuration properties and their values are displayed.
- 5 To edit the existing property values:
  - Select the property that you want to update.
  - At the bottom of the window, edit the property, either by selecting from a pull-down list or by entering the new property value in place of the current property value. All the properties, by category, are defined in the Configuration properties section in this guide.
  - Save the changes for each property by clicking the Commit Change button. Click the Reset to Run Value button if you have committed a change and want to reset it to the original value.

To edit any of the remaining property categories, select the appropriate tab and repeat the same process, starting with step 4. When you have completed editing all the properties within the property categories, click either the service name that you edited, or the service name that you are going to edit next.

For additional information, refer to DirectConnect Manager online help.

## **Using the text editor**

To edit the configuration property values using the text editor:

- 1 Open the DB2 Access Service Library configuration file. Update the service library configuration properties.
- 2 Open the DB2 access services file and change DB2 access service property values as applicable.  
  
List each property and value under the appropriate subsection. If the subsection is not shown, you must add it.
- 3 Save the file.
- 4 Stop the server, and then restart it to implement the changes.

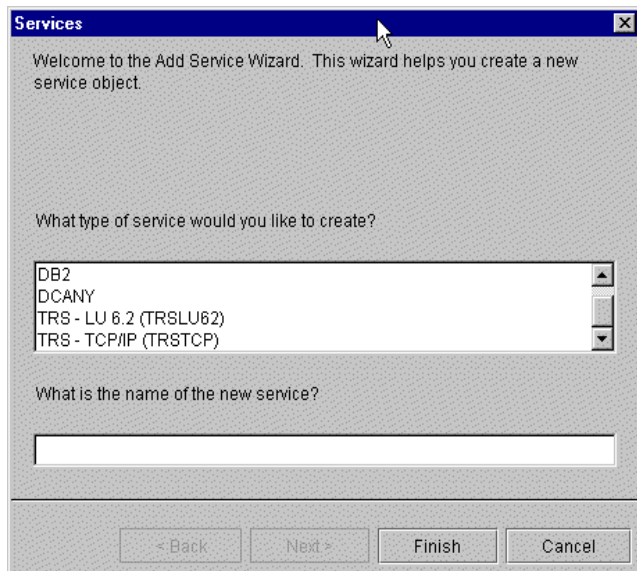
## How to create additional services

You can create additional DB2 access services in the same way you change existing ones, either by using the text editor to edit the text file or by using DirectConnect Manager.

### Using DirectConnect Manager

To use DirectConnect Manager to either add or create a new DB2 access service:

**Figure 2-2: Creating a DB2 access service using DC Manager**



To use DirectConnect Manager to create a service:

- 1 Start up DirectConnect Manager.
- 2 Double-click the DCDirector server name (as indicated in Figure 2-1).
- 3 Double click the server name you want.
- 4 Select Services | File | Create services.
- 5 Enter the name for the new access service that you are creating.
- 6 Click finish.

To add additional access services, repeat steps 4-6.

## Using the text editor

To create a service or additional services:

- 1 Open the DB2 Access Service Library configuration file called *db2.cfg*.
- 2 Create a section for each new service and add:
  - The service name, in brackets
  - Required properties below the service name, grouped in the (ACS Required) subsection
  - Property value overrides listed below the service name, grouped by subsection
- 3 Save the file.
- 4 Stop the server, then restart it to implement the changes.
- 5 To connect to a new DB2 access service from a client machine, you must enter the DB2 access service name in the *sql.ini* configuration file on Windows NT machines or the interfaces on UNIX client machines. If you choose to use service name redirection, make an assigned service name entry in the service name redirection file.

For instructions about editing the *sql.ini* or *interfaces* file, see the *DirectConnect Installation Guide for OS/390* for your platform.

For information about service name redirection, see the *DirectConnect Server Administration Guide*.

## Configuration properties

The following principles apply to DB2 Access Service Library and DB2 access service properties:

- All properties are grouped into categories.
- Service library properties apply to the DB2 Access Service Library as a whole.
- DB2 access service properties apply to specific DB2 access services.

- Configuration properties are not case sensitive.

## Property categories

The following sections describe the property categories:

- ACS Required properties
- Catalog Stored Procedure properties
- Client Interaction properties
- Data Conversion Error properties
- Datatype Conversion properties
- Logging properties
- Target Interaction properties
- Tracing properties
- Transfer properties

See Appendix A, “Configuration References and Code Set Tables” for an alphabetized listing of all configuration properties within the DB2 Access Service Library.

## ACS Required properties

Some DB2 access service properties require specific values for your site. These required properties reside in the ACS Required property category. Be sure to supply these values following your installation.

The subsection heading and properties must appear in the service library configuration file as follows:

```
{ACS Required}
```

ConnectionProtocol  
ConnectionSpec1  
ConnectionSpec2  
ConnectionSpec3  
DefaultClientCodeset (see code set translation)  
DefaultTargetCodeset (see code set translation)  
UseClientCharset (see code set translation)  
TPName

Each of the required properties is described in the following subsections.

The following code set translation section describes the relationship between three of the ACS required properties; DefaultClientCodeset, DefaultTargetCodeset, and UseClientCharset.

## Code set translation

To determine if code set translation is performed by the DirectConnect access service or by the target host, the values of the three following configuration properties must be considered. Each configuration property is described in the following sections:

- DefaultClientCodeset
- DefaultTargetCodeset
- UseClientCharset

Recommended  
default values

The recommended default values for the three configuration properties are:

```
DefaultClientCodeset = OpenServerDefault  
Default TargetCodeset = OpenServerDefault  
UseClientCharset = yes
```

Using the recommended default values causes *no translation* to take place by the DirectConnect access service and results in translation at the target, using the client code set value in the client *login* record.

The list of certified code set identifiers are available in the *Unilib Reference Manual Developer's Kit for Unicode*.

---

**Note** OpenServerDefault is the default and becomes the value assigned, by platform, in the server's *locales.dat* file.

---

Configuration property relationships	<p>Code set translation takes place either in the DirectConnect access service or at the target host based on the following relationships:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the values of the <code>DefaultClientCodeset</code> and the <code>DefaultTargetCodeset</code> are equal, and the <code>UseClientCharset</code> is equal to <i>yes</i>, then translation takes place at the target, using the value from the client <i>login</i> record.</li> <li>• If the values of the <code>DefaultClientCodeset</code> and the <code>DefaultTargetCodeset</code> are equal, and the <code>UseClientCharset</code> is equal to <i>no</i>, then translation takes place at the target host using the <code>DefaultClientCodeset</code> value.</li> <li>• If the values of the <code>DefaultClientCodeset</code> and the <code>DefaultTargetCodeset</code> are <i>not</i> equal, and the <code>UseClientCharset</code> is equal to <i>yes</i>, then translation takes place in DC using the value from the client <i>login</i> record.</li> <li>• If the values of the <code>DefaultClientCodeset</code> and the <code>DefaultTargetCodeset</code> are <i>not</i> equal, and the <code>UseClientCharset</code> is equal to <i>no</i>, then translation takes place at the target host using the <code>DefaultClientCodeset</code> value.</li> </ul>
--------------------------------------	--

## ConnectionProtocol

Specifies the communication protocol the DB2 access service uses to connect to the target database.

Syntax	<code>ConnectionProtocol=[lu62   tcpip]</code>
Default	lu62
Values	<p>lu62 specifies LU 6.2 as the communications protocol that the DB2 access service uses to connect to the target database.</p> <p>tcpip specifies TCP/IP as the communications protocol that the DB2 access service uses to connect to the target database.</p>

## ConnectionSpec1

Specifies the platform-specific LU 6.2 connection information or the IP address for TCP/IP communications.

Syntax	<code>ConnectionSpec1=char</code>
Range	1–255 characters
Default	No default
Values	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For TCP/IP, the <i>name or IP address</i> of the host.</li> </ul>

- For LU 6.2 communications, the value is platform-dependent:
  - Windows NT: *Local LU alias*
  - Solaris: *Local LU alias*
  - HP: *Local LU alias*
  - AIX: *Side information profile name*

Comments                      The communications protocol determines the maximum acceptable length for this property value.

## ConnectionSpec2

Specifies the platform-specific LU 6.2 connection information or the port number for TCP/IP communications.

Syntax                        ConnectionSpec2=*char*

Range                         1–255 characters

Default                      No default

- Values
- For TCP/IP, the *port number* that the CICS region is listening on.
  - For LU 6.2 communications, this value is platform-dependent:
    - Windows NT: *Remote LU Alias*
    - Solaris: *Remote LU Alias*
    - HP: *Remote LU Alias*
    - AIX: Not used but must not be blank

Comments                      The communications protocol determines the maximum acceptable length for this property value.

## ConnectionSpec3

Specifies the SNA mode name for LU 6.2 communications or the CICS region name running Open ServerConnect for TCP/IP communications.

Syntax                        ConnectionSpec3=*char*

Range                         1–255 characters

Default                      No default



Values	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For SNA, the SNA mode name for LU 6.2 communications</li> <li>• For TCP/IP, the port number for the TCP/IP communications</li> </ul>
Comments	The communications protocol determines the maximum acceptable length for this property value.

## DefaultClientCodeset

Specifies the code set the client application uses when sending information to the DB2 access service. For an explanation of the relationship with the DefaultTargetCodeset and the UseClientCharset, see “Code set translation” on page 22.

Syntax	DefaultClientCodeset=[clientcodeset   OpenServerDefault]
Range	1–255 characters
Default	OpenServerDefault
Values	<p>To operate correctly, the DB2 access service requires a DefaultClientCodeset value that accurately reflects the code set of the client application.</p> <p>Enter one of the following as the DefaultClientCodeset value:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The client application code set identifier.</li> <li>• The default setting, OpenServerDefault, which specifies that the DB2 access service uses the code set value passed in the <i>login</i> record.</li> </ul>
Comments	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For information regarding the relationship of the DefaultClientCodeset, DefaultTargetCodeset, and the UseClientCharset refer to the Code set translation section.</li> <li>• When data passes from the client application to the target database, the DB2 access service converts the data from the DefaultClientCodeset to the DefaultTargetCodeset if the two property values are unequal and the UseClientCharset=yes.</li> <li>• The DB2 access service obtains the client application language from one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The login record</li> <li>• The server DefaultServerLanguage configuration property value</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>For information about the DefaultServerLanguage property that defines the language in which the client messages that originate in the DirectConnect server are returned, see the <i>DirectConnect Server Administration Guide</i>.</p>

## DefaultTargetCodeset

Specifies the target code set the DB2 access service uses to convert characters when it sends data to the target database. For an explanation of the relationship with the DefaultClientCodeset and the UseClientCharset, see “Code set translation” on page 22.

Syntax	DefaultTargetCodeset=[targetcodeset   OpenServerDefault]
Range	1–255 characters
Default	OpenServerDefault
Values	The DefaultTargetCodeset value name corresponds to a code set identifier.
Comments	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• For information regarding the relationship of the DefaultClientCodesetDefaultTargetCodeset, and the UseClientCharset refer to the “Code set translation” on page 22.</li><li>• When data passes from the target database to the client application, the DB2 access service converts the data from the DefaultTargetCodeset to the DefaultClientCodeset. (See “DefaultClientCodeset” on page 25.)</li><li>• The DefaultTargetCodeset property enables the DB2 access service to support single-byte or mixed-byte language machines.</li></ul>

## UseClientCharset

Specifies how the UseClientCharset is used in the data translation process. For an explanation of the relationship with the DefaultClientCodeset and the DefaultTargetCodeset, see the section, “Code set translation” on page 22.

Syntax	UseClientCharset= [yes   no]
Default	yes
Value	yes, no
Comments	yes causes DirectConnect to synchronize the DefaultClientCodeset and the client’s login charset, thus using the client’s charset for all translations.

## TPName

The CICS transaction program (TP) name for a specific MainframeConnect for DB2 UDB program. The DB2 access service accesses this TP name on the mainframe.

Syntax	TPName= [tpname   AMD2]
Range	1–8 characters
Default	AMD2
Values	tpname is the CICS transaction program (TP) name for a specific MainframeConnect for DB2 program.

## Catalog Stored Procedure properties

These properties control the information a DB2 access service returns from catalog stored procedures (CSPs). For more information about CSPs, see Chapter 12, “Accessing Catalog Information with CSPs”.

The subsection heading and the properties must appear in the service library configuration file as:

```
{Catalog Stored Procedures}
```

```
CSPCatalogQualifier  
CSPDBName  
CSPEclusions  
CSPIncludeAlias  
CSPIncludeSynonym  
CSPIncludeSystem  
CSPIncludeTable  
CSPIncludeView  
CSPQualByDBName  
DatatypeInfo  
SQLInformationFile
```

## CSPCatalogQualifier

Specifies the qualifier of the system tables a DB2 access service uses when processing CSPs.

Syntax	CSPCatalogQualifier=[ <i>qualifier</i>   SYSIBM]
Range	0–255 characters
Default	SYSIBM

Values *qualifier* is the name of the system catalog.  
If you do not specify a value, the default is SYSIBM.

## CSPDBName

Specifies the name of the database about which a DB2 access service returns information from the `sp_tables` CSP.

Syntax `CSPDBName=dbname`

Range 0–255 characters

Default No default

Values *dbname* is a database name from the DB2 system catalog.

## CSPExclusions

Specifies whether a DB2 access service limits access to information normally returned from the `sp_tables` CSP based upon authorization to information.

Syntax `CSPExclusions=[user | none | nonauth | nonauthpublic]`

Default *user*

Values *none* specifies that objects are not excluded from the result set based on authorization or ownership.

*user* specifies that objects are excluded from the result set based on specific user authorization information.

*nonauth* specifies that non-authorized and public objects are excluded from the result set.

*nonauthpublic* specifies that non-authorized objects are excluded from the result set, and public objects are included in the result set.

## CSPIncludeAlias

Specifies whether the DB2 access service returns information about aliases from the `sp_tables` CSP.

Syntax `CSPIncludeAlias=[no | yes]`

Default	no
Values	no specifies that the DB2 access service does not return information about aliases.  yes specifies that the DB2 access service returns information about aliases.

## **CSPIncludeSynonym**

Specifies whether the DB2 access service returns information about synonyms from the sp\_tables CSP.

Syntax	CSPIncludeSynonym=[no   yes]
Default	no
Values	no specifies that the DB2 access service does not return information about synonyms.  yes specifies that the DB2 access service returns information about synonyms.

## **CSPIncludeSystem**

Specifies whether the DB2 access service returns information about the system tables from the sp\_tables CSP.

Syntax	CSPIncludeSystem=[no   yes]
Default	no
Values	no specifies that the DB2 access service does not return information about system tables.  yes specifies that the DB2 access service returns information about system tables.
Comments	The user issuing sp_tables must be authorized to query these tables.

## **CSPIncludeTable**

Specifies whether the DB2 access service returns information about tables from the sp\_tables CSP.

Syntax	CSPIncludeTable=[yes   no]
--------	----------------------------

Default	yes
Values	yes specifies that the DB2 access service returns information about tables. no specifies that the DB2 access service does not return information about tables.

## CSPIncludeView

Specifies whether the DB2 access service returns information about views from the sp\_tables CSP.

Syntax	CSPIncludeView=[yes   no]
Default	yes
Values	yes specifies that the DB2 access service returns information about views. no specifies that the DB2 access service does not return information about views.

## CSPQualByDBName

Specifies whether the value in the CSPDBName property should be used to further qualify the result set from the sp\_tables CSP.

Syntax	CSPQualByDBName=[no   yes]
Default	no
Values	no specifies that the DB2 access service does not limit the result set from sp_tables to a particular database. yes specifies that the DB2 access service returns information from sp_tables for a particular database.
Comments	For more information, see “CSPDBName” on page 28.

## DatatypeInfo

Specifies the type of datatype information returned from the sp\_datatype\_info CSP.

Syntax	DatatypeInfo=[transact   target]
--------	----------------------------------

Default	transact
Values	transact specifies that sp_datatype_info to return the Transact-SQL (T-SQL) datatypes that map to the ODBC datatypes that the target supports.  target specifies that sp_datatype_info to return target datatype information.

## SQLInformationFile

Specifies the file that the sp\_sqlgetinfo system procedure uses for target database information.

Syntax	SQLInformationFile=[filename   db2.sif]
Range	0–128 characters
Default	db2.sif
Values	filename is the file with sp_sqlgetinfo information.
Comments	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• During installation, DirectConnect places a default copy of the SQL information file for each DB2 Access Service Library into the <i>econnect\servername\cfg</i> directory, where <i>servername</i> is the name of the DirectConnect server. If this property is left blank or not changed, the default file is used.</li><li>• To customize the file, you first make a copy of the default file, save it under a new file name, and then edit the custom file by following these rules:<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Do not modify the header section of the file.</li><li>• Begin comments with a semicolon (;) or crosshatch (#) in column 1, on a line by themselves.</li><li>• Add additional properties to the [Start SQLGetInfo] section of the file in the property=<i>value</i> format as follows: <pre>SQL_ACTIVE_ConnectIONS=0</pre></li><li>• Save the file.</li></ul></li><li>• To use the custom file, you must enter the custom file name as the SQLInformationFile property value.</li><li>• If you move the custom file to a directory other than the <i>econnect\servername\cfg</i> directory and want to use the file, enter the full path and custom file name as the SQLInformationFile property value.</li></ul>

## Client Interaction properties

These properties control how a DB2 access service interacts with client applications.

The subsection heading for these properties must appear in the service library configuration file as:

```
{Client Interaction}
```

```
ApplicationValidationFile
```

```
ClientDecimalSeparator
```

```
ClientIdleTimeout
```

```
EnableAtStartup
```

```
GatewayCompatible
```

```
MaxResultSize
```

```
MaxRowsReturned
```

```
MaxSvcConnections
```

```
quoted_identifier
```

```
SendWarningMessages
```

```
ServiceDescription
```

```
SvclibDescription
```

```
TextSize
```

```
TransactionMode
```

```
Version
```

## ApplicationValidationFile

Points to a file with application validation information. This property is included for backward compatibility with MDI Database Gateway only. To use this feature, set the `GatewayCompatible` property to `yes`.

Syntax	<code>ApplicationValidationFile=pathname</code>
Range	0–128 characters
Default	No default
Values	<i>pathname</i> is the complete file specification, including the full path name, for the file with application validation information.
Comments	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Sybase recommends that you use the service name redirection capability as described in the <i>DirectConnect Server Administration Guide</i> instead of application validation.</li></ul>



- If you choose to use both service name redirection and application validation, service name redirection takes precedence.

## ClientDecimalSeparator

Specifies the character the client application uses to separate decimal numbers for presentation purposes. The target database does not store the client decimal delimiter character.

Syntax `ClientDecimalSeparator=[. | ,]`

Default `.` (period)

Values A period (.) indicates that the client application uses a period as the decimal delimiter.

A comma (,) indicates that the client application uses a comma as the decimal delimiter.

- Comments
- If some of your client applications use a different character as a decimal delimiter, make sure that those applications connect to a DB2 access service configuration set that uses the same client decimal delimiter character.
  - If the client decimal delimiter is a comma (,), set the `DecimalResults` property value to `char` to enable the DB2 access service to return decimal results with a comma as the client decimal delimiter.
  - If the `SQLTransformation` property value is `passthrough`, use the `TargetDecimalSeparator` value for all SQL requests going to the target database. For example, if the `TargetDecimalSeparator` value is a period (.), use a period for the decimal delimiter in all SQL requests going to the target database (such as insert statements).
  - For information about SQL transformation modes, see “SQL transformation modes” on page 107.

## ClientIdleTimeout

Specifies how many minutes a client connection can remain inactive before a DB2 access service terminates the connection.

Syntax `ClientIdleTimeout=integer`

Range 0–1024

Default	0
Values	<p><i>integer</i> is how many minutes a client connection can remain inactive before a DB2 access service terminates the connection.</p> <p>0 indicates that a DB2 access service never terminates an idle connection.</p>
Comments	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• A connection is idle when:<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• A client connected but did not issue a command.</li><li>• A command processed, but the client did not issue another command.</li><li>• A large result set returned from SQL request processing, and the result window paused for the specified timeout period.</li></ul></li><li>• The DB2 access service checks client activity each minute. Therefore, a client can remain inactive for up to one minute beyond the ClientIdleTimeout value before the DB2 access service terminates the connection.</li></ul>

## EnableAtStartup

Specifies whether this DB2 access service starts when the DirectConnect server starts.

Syntax	EnableAtStartup=[no   yes]
Default	no
Values	<p>no means that the DB2 access service does not start when the server starts.</p> <p>yes means that the DB2 access service does start when the server starts.</p>
Comments	If you are not using DirectConnect Manager to manage your DB2 access services, set this property to yes.

## GatewayCompatible

Specifies whether the DB2 access service accepts and returns MDI Database Gateway set statements, global variables, and a few error messages that client applications use to make processing decisions. This property is included for backward compatibility with MDI Database Gateway only. Sybase recommends that you use current DB2 access service settings.

Syntax	GatewayCompatible=[no   yes]
--------	------------------------------

Default	no
Values	<p>no means that the DB2 access service recognizes DB2 access service settings only.</p> <p>yes means that the DB2 access service recognizes both DB2 access service settings and MDI Database Gateway settings.</p>
Comments	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Backward compatibility with the MDI Database Gateway is provided only as an interim measure to allow you to upgrade your client applications to the syntax supported in the DB2 access service.</li> <li>• If your client applications do not require MDI Database Gateway settings, set this value to no to use DB2 access service settings only.</li> <li>• If your current client applications use previous MDI Database Gateway global variables and set statements, set this property to yes to allow your applications to continue using MDI Database Gateway settings.</li> </ul>

## MaxResultSize

Specifies the maximum number of bytes a DB2 access service returns to the client application in a result set.

Syntax	<code>MaxResultSize=<i>integer</i></code>
Range	0–2147483646
Default	2147483646
Values	<p><i>integer</i> is a number of bytes.</p> <p>A value of 0 (zero) defaults to 2147483646 bytes (the default value).</p>
Comments	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The MaxResultSize value is approximate in that a DB2 access service checks at the end of each row to see if the MaxResultSize value was exceeded.</li> <li>• If the MaxResultSize value is exceeded, the DB2 access service: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Sends the entire row to the client application (not a partial row).</li> <li>• Does not send any of the remaining rows in the result set.</li> <li>• Issues a warning message.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

- Typically, the number of bytes returned is less than the value of the `MaxResultSize` property because the calculations for character columns are based on the defined size, whereas the actual data contained in these columns is usually less.
- The `SendWarningMessages` property controls whether the DB2 access service returns warning messages to the client application. See “`SendWarningMessages`” on page 38.

## MaxRowsReturned

Specifies the maximum number of rows a DB2 access service returns to the client application in a result set.

Syntax `MaxRowsReturned=integer`

Range 0–2147483646

Default 2147483646

Values *integer* is a number of rows.

A value of 0 (zero) defaults to 2147483646 rows (the default value).

- Comments
- If the `MaxRowsReturned` value is exceeded, the DB2 access service issues a warning message and does not send any of the remaining rows in the result set.
  - The `SendWarningMessages` property controls whether the DB2 access service returns warning messages to the client application. See “`SendWarningMessages`” on page 38.

## MaxSvcConnections

Specifies the maximum number of client connections the DB2 access service can handle at one time.

Syntax `MaxSvcConnections=[integer | MaxConnections]`

Range 1–*n*, where *n* is the maximum number of client connections allowed by the server.

Default `MaxConnections` property value of the `DirectConnect` server

Values *integer* is a number of client connections.

Comments	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The server MaxConnections property determines the maximum number of client connections. For information about MaxConnections, see the <i>DirectConnect Server Administration Guide</i>.</li> <li>The Allocate property value can affect the number of client connections: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If the Allocate property is set to connect, MaxSvcConnections should be equal to or less than the number of parallel APPC sessions that can be supported from the server to DB2.</li> <li>If the Allocate property is set to request, you can set the MaxSvcConnections property to a value greater than the number of parallel APPC sessions that you configured in your APPC software. For more information about the Allocate property, see “Allocate” on page 59.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <hr/> <p><b>Note</b> The DB2 access service does not verify the validity of the MaxSvcConnections value.</p> <hr/> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For information about APPC connections, see your APPC software documentation for your specific DBMS and platform.</li> </ul>
----------	---

## quoted\_identifier

Specifies whether to enable or disable delimited identifiers. Delimited identifiers are object names enclosed in double quotes. You can use them to avoid certain restrictions on object names. Table, view, and column names can be delimited by quotes; other names cannot.

Delimited identifiers can:

- Be reserved words
- Begin with non-alphabetic characters
- Include characters that ordinarily are not allowed

Syntax	quoted_identifer=[on   off]
Default	off
Values	<p>on means that a quoted string used as an identifier is recognized.</p> <p>off means that a quoted string used as an identifier is not recognized as an identifier.</p>
Comments	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Delimited identifiers follow the conventions for identifiers for DB2.</li> </ul>

- Before you create or reference a delimited identifier, issue the following statement:

```
set quoted_identifier on
```

Each time you use the delimited identifier in a statement, you must enclose it in double quotes. For example:

```
create table "lone" (col 1 char(3))
create table "include spaces" (col1 int)
```

or

```
create table "grant"("add" int)
insert "grant"("add") values (3)
```

- When the `quoted_identifier` configuration property is turned *on*, use single quotes, not double quotes, around character or date strings. Delimiting strings with double quotes causes Adaptive Server to treat them as identifiers. The following example shows the correct way to insert a character string into `col1` of `lone` when the quoted identifier “lone” is turned on:

```
insert "lone"(col1) values ('abc')
```

- To insert a single quote into a column, use two consecutive single quotation marks. The following example shows the correct way to insert the values “a'b” into `col1`:

```
insert "lone"(col1) values('a"b')
```

## SendWarningMessages

Specifies whether a DB2 access service returns warning messages to the client application.

Syntax                      `SendWarningMessages=[no | yes]`

Default                      `no`

Values                      `no` specifies the DB2 access service not to return warning messages to the client application.

`yes` specifies the DB2 access service to return warning messages to the client application.

Comments                      For information about error messages, see the *DirectConnect Error Message Guide*.

## ServiceDescription

	Describes a DB2 access service.
Syntax	<code>ServiceDescription=char</code>
Range	0–255 characters
Default	No default
Values	<i>char</i> is a user-defined character string.
Comments	This property allows you to place descriptive information in the configuration file about each DB2 access service.

## SvclibDescription

	Describes the DB2 Access Service Library.
Syntax	<code>SvclibDescription=char</code>
Range	0–255 characters
Default	No default
Comments	This property allows you to place descriptive information about the DB2 Access Service Library in the configuration file.

## TextSize

	Specifies the maximum number of bytes in character columns a DB2 access service returns to the client application.
Syntax	<code>TextSize=integer</code>
Range	0–32000
Default	32000
Values	<i>integer</i> is a number of bytes.  A value of 0 (zero) defaults to 32000 (the default value).
Comments	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• A DB2 access service truncates data exceeding the TextSize length and does not issue a warning message.</li><li>• The DB2 access service returns character data longer than 255 bytes as CS_TEXT datatype.</li></ul>

## TransactionMode

Specifies whether the DB2 access service or the client application manages commits and rollbacks.

Syntax                      TransactionMode=[short | long]

Default                     short

Values                      long specifies the DB2 access service to give commitment control to the client application. The DB2 access service holds open the connection to the target database until the client application issues a commit or rollback or until the ClientIdleTimeout value (see “ClientIdleTimeout” on page 33) is exceeded. If ClientIdleTimeout is exceeded, the transaction rolls back.

short indicates that the DB2 access service issues a commit or a rollback after each request.

## Version

Allows you to customize an alternate version string for client applications that rely on a particular string that is different from the DB2 access service default version string.

Syntax                      Version=*versionstring*

Default                     The DB2 access service default version string

Values                      *versionstring* is the version string you want reported to client applications.

Comments                   • If you leave this property blank, it defaults to the DB2 access service default version string.

                              • If you customize an alternate version string, the following rules apply:

- The format of this string cannot contain embedded new lines.
- You can insert a space after the equal sign (=) for readability in the configuration file; however, when a DB2 access service sends the version string to the client application, it removes any leading and trailing white space.

                              • You can obtain the access service default version string by issuing sp\_helpserver (see sp\_helpserver on page 242).



## Data Conversion Error properties

These properties control the action a DB2 access service takes when it encounters data conversion errors.

The subsection heading for these properties must appear in the service library configuration file as:

```
{Data Conversion Errors)
```

```
CharConvertError
```

```
DateTimeConvertError
```

```
DefaultDate
```

```
DefaultNum
```

```
DefaultTime
```

```
NumConvertError
```

### CharConvertError

Specifies the action a DB2 access service takes when it encounters a result column that is too long for the target column.

Syntax

```
CharConvertError=[reject | truncate]
```

Default

```
reject
```

Values

reject specifies the DB2 access service to reject the row containing the error and issue a warning message.

truncate specifies the DB2 access service to insert data to the length of the target column, truncate the remaining data, and issue a warning message.

Comments

The SendWarningMessages property controls whether the DB2 access service returns warning messages to the client application. (See “SendWarningMessages” on page 38.)

### DateTimeConvertError

Specifies the action a DB2 access service takes when it encounters rows with date, time, or datetime data values that are out of range for the target datatype.

Syntax

```
DateTimeConvertError=[reject | null | default]
```

Default

```
reject
```

Values	<p>reject specifies the DB2 access service to reject the row containing the error and issue a warning message.</p> <p>null specifies the DB2 access service to insert a NULL into the column and issues a warning message (unless the source column is defined as “not null”).</p> <p>default specifies that the DB2 access service inserts the default date and time values as configured in the DefaultDate and DefaultTime properties into the column (see “DefaultDate” on page 42 and “DefaultTime” on page 43) and issues a warning message.</p>
Comments	<p>The SendWarningMessages property controls whether the DB2 access service returns warning messages to the client application. (See “SendWarningMessages” on page 38.)</p>

## DefaultDate

Specifies the value a DB2 access service inserts into columns with date conversion errors when DateTimeConvertError is set to default. (See “DateTimeConvertError” on page 41.)

---

**Note** The DefaultDate property value must be within a valid range for the associated data conversion property values.

---

Syntax	DefaultDate=yyyy-mm-dd
Default	1900-01-01
Values	<p>yyyy-mm-dd where:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• yyyy is the year.</li><li>• mm is the month.</li><li>• dd is the day.</li></ul>

## DefaultNum

Specifies the value a DB2 access service inserts into columns with numeric conversion errors when NumConvertError is set to default. (See “NumConvertError” on page 43.)

---

**Note** The DefaultNum property value must be within a valid range for the associated data conversion property values.

---

Syntax

DefaultNum=*integer*

Default

0

Values

*integer* is a valid number that replaces the value that caused the conversion error.

## DefaultTime

Specifies the value a DB2 access service inserts into columns with time conversion errors when DateTimeConvertError is set to default. (See “DateTimeConvertError” on page 41.)

---

**Note** The DefaultTime property value must be within a valid range for the associated data conversion property values.

---

Syntax

DefaultTime=*hh.mm.ss*

Default

00.00.00

Values

*hh.mm.ss* is the default time, where:

- *hh* is the hour in 24-hour clock time.
- *mm* is the minute.
- *ss* is the second.
- A period is used as the delimiter.

## NumConvertError

Specifies the action a DB2 access service takes when it encounters rows with numeric data values that are out of range for the target datatype.

Syntax	NumConvertError=[ <i>reject</i>   <i>null</i>   <i>default</i> ]
Default	reject
Values	<p><i>reject</i> specifies the DB2 access service to reject the row containing the error and issue a warning message.</p> <p><i>null</i> specifies the DB2 access service to insert a NULL into the column and issue a warning message.</p> <p><i>default</i> specifies the DB2 access service to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Insert the default numeric value as configured in the DefaultNum property into the column. (See “DefaultNum” on page 43.)</li><li>• Issue a warning message to the client application.</li></ul>
Comments	The SendWarningMessages property controls whether the DB2 access service returns warning messages to the client application. (See “SendWarningMessages” on page 38.)

## Datatype Conversion properties

These properties control how a DB2 access service converts target database datatypes to Open Client/Server datatypes before sending the data to the client application.

The subsection heading for these properties must appear in the service library configuration file as:

```
{Datatype Conversion}
```

```
BinaryResults  
DateResults  
DateTimeResults  
DecimalResults  
FloatResults  
GraphicResults  
Int2Results  
Int4Results  
RealResults  
TimeResults  
XNLChar  
XNLVarChar
```

To provide portability across DBMSs, the names of the configuration properties refer to generic datatypes. The description includes specific target database datatypes to which these generic datatypes correspond.

---

**Note** Datatype conversion properties control conversion of outgoing data from the DBMS. These properties do not control conversion of incoming data from client applications.

---

For information about converting incoming data from client applications, see Chapter 4, “Converting Datatypes”.

## BinaryResults

Specifies the Open Client/Server datatype to which a DB2 access service converts DB2 result columns that are described as either CHAR FOR BIT DATA or VARCHAR FOR BIT DATA.

Syntax	BinaryResults=[binary   char]
Default	binary
Values	binary indicates that results of 255 bytes or less are returned as CS_BINARY; those with 256 bytes or more are returned as CS_IMAGE.  char indicates that results of 255 bytes or less are returned as CS_CHAR; those with 256 bytes or more are returned as CS_TEXT.

## DateResults

Specifies the Open Client/Server datatype to which a DB2 access service converts DB2 DATE results.

Syntax	DateResults=[datetime   datetime4   char_iso   char_usa   char_eur   char_jis   char_odbc]
Default	datetime
Values	With Open Client version 10.0.4 and later, the default display format of CS_DATETIME for character conversions changes from a <i>long</i> version to a <i>short</i> version:  datetime returns the following:

- Prior to Open Client version 10.0.4 and later, `datetime` returns `CS_DATETIME` as an eight byte *long* datatype that displays a date with a precision of 1/300th of a second (3.33 milliseconds).
- Starting with Open Client version 10.0.4 and later, `datetime` returns `CS_DATETIME` as a *short* datatype that displays a date without seconds and 1/300ths of a second.

To change to the long format, insert the following code into the application program after it has allocated a `CS_CONTEXT` structure through `cs_ctx_alloc ()` or `cs_ctx_global ()`:

```
CS_INT dtconvfmt;

dtconvfmt = CS_DATES_LONG;
if (cs_dt_info(*context, CS_SET, NULL,
CS_DT_CONVFM, CS_UNUSED,
&dtconvfmt, (CS_INT)NULL, NULL) != CS_SUCCEED)

print("cs_dt_info() failed\n");
```

`datetime4` returns `CS_DATETIME4`, a four byte datetime datatype with a range of legal values from January 1, 1900, to June 6, 2079, and a precision of 1 minute.

`char_iso` returns `CS_CHAR`, character data in the format `yyyy-mm-dd`.

`char_usa` returns `CS_CHAR`, character data in the format `mm/dd/yyyy`.

`char_eur` returns `CS_CHAR`, character data in the format `dd.mm.yyyy`.

`char_jis` returns `CS_CHAR`, character data in the format `yyyy-mm-dd`.

`char_odbc` returns character data in the format `yyyy-mm-dd`.

## DateTimeResults

Specifies the Open Client/Server datatype to which a DB2 access service converts DB2 `TIMESTAMP` results.

### Syntax

`DateTimeResults`=[`datetime` | `datetime4` | `char_iso` | `char_usa` | `char_eur` | `char_jis` | `char_odbc`]

### Default

`datetime`

### Values

`datetime` returns `CS_DATETIME`, an eight byte datetime datatype with a range of legal values from January 1, 1753, to December 31, 9999, and a precision of 1/300th of a second (3.33 milliseconds).

`datetime4` returns `CS_DATETIME4`, a four byte datetime datatype with a range of legal values from January 1, 1900, to June 6, 2079, and a precision of 1 minute.

`char_iso` returns `CS_CHAR`, character data in the format *yyyy-mm-dd-hh.mm.ss.nnnnnn*.

`char_usa` returns `CS_CHAR`, character data in the format *mm/dd/yyyy hh:mm [AM | PM]*.

`char_eur` returns `CS_CHAR`, character data in the format *dd.mm.yyyy hh.mm.ss*.

`char_jis` returns `CS_CHAR`, character data in the format *yyyy-mm-dd hh:mm:ss*.

`char_odbc` returns `CS_CHAR`, character data in the format *yyyy-mm-dd hh:mm:ss.nnnnnn*.

Comments

You can convert DB2 `TIMESTAMP` to one of the character formats to retain more precision. `CS_DATETIME` has less precision (1/300ths of a second) than `TIMESTAMP` (millionths of a second).

## DecimalResults

Specifies the Open Client/Server datatype to which a DB2 access service converts DB2 `DECIMAL` results.

Syntax

`DecimalResults=[autoconvert | int | float | real | char | money | money4 | bcd]`

Default

`autoconvert`

Values

`autoconvert` means the DB2 access service chooses the appropriate datatype to return according to the following conversion scheme:

- The DB2 access service returns `CS_DECIMAL` datatype to Client-Library and DB-Library 10.x client applications.
- The DB2 access service returns the following values for Client-Library and DB-Library client applications prior to version 10.x:
  - If the decimal value has 0 digits to the right of the decimal delimiter and the total number of digits is less than or equal to 9 (scale equals 0 and precision is equal to or less than 9), the DB2 access service returns `CS_INT`.

- If the decimal value has 0 to 2 digits to the right of the decimal delimiter and the total number of digits is less than or equal to 14 (scale is equal to or less than 2 and precision minus scale is equal to or less than 14), the DB2 access service returns CS\_MONEY.
- For any other decimal value, the DB2 access service returns CS\_FLOAT.

int returns CS\_INT, a four byte integer type.

float returns CS\_FLOAT, an eight byte float type.

real returns CS\_REAL, a four byte float type.

char returns CS\_CHAR, a character type.

money returns CS\_MONEY, an eight byte money type.

money4 returns CS\_MONEY4, a four byte money type.

bcd is valid only if you have columns described in BCD format.

The DB2 access service returns BCD columns as CS\_BINARY or CS\_VARBINARY with the following format:

- If precision is even, the first nibble is 0.
- Intervening digits are represented in binary coded decimal (BCD) format with one nibble per digit.
- The final nibble indicates the sign: C is positive, and D is negative.
- No indication of decimal position is given. The client application is responsible for determining decimal position.

Comments

If the ClientDecimalSeparator property value is a character other than a period (.), set the DecimalResults property value to char to enable the DB2 access service to return decimal results with the correct client decimal delimiter.

## FloatResults

Specifies the Open Client/Server datatype to which a DB2 access service converts DB2 FLOAT results.

Syntax

FloatResults=[float | real | char]

Default

float

Values

float returns CS\_FLOAT, an eight byte float type.



real returns CS\_REAL, a four byte float type.

char returns CS\_CHAR, a character type.

## GraphicResults

Specifies the Open Client/Server datatype to which a DB2 access service converts DB2 GRAPHIC or VARGRAPHIC results.

Syntax                      GraphicResults=[*binary* | *char*]

Default                     binary

Values                      *binary* indicates that results of 255 bytes or less are returned as CS\_BINARY; those with 256 bytes or more are returned as CS\_IMAGE.

*char* indicates that results of 255 bytes or less are returned as CS\_CHAR; those with 256 bytes or more are returned as CS\_TEXT.

## Int2Results

Specifies the Open Client/Server datatype to which a DB2 access service converts DB2 SMALLINT results.

Syntax                      Int2Results=[*smallint* | *char*]

Default                     smallint

Values                      smallint returns CS\_SMALLINT, a two byte integer type.

char returns CS\_CHAR, a character type.

## Int4Results

Specifies the Open Client/Server datatype to which a DB2 access service converts DB2 INTEGER results.

Syntax                      Int4Results=[*int* | *char*]

Default                     int

Values                      int returns CS\_INT, a four byte integer type.

char returns CS\_CHAR, a character type.

## RealResults

Specifies the Open Client/Server datatype to which a DB2 access service converts DB2 REAL results.

Syntax	RealResults=[float   real   char]
Default	float
Values	float returns CS_FLOAT, an eight byte float type. real returns CS_REAL, a four byte float type. char returns CS_CHAR, a character type.

## TimeResults

Specifies the Open Client/Server datatype to which a DB2 access service converts DB2 TIME results.

Syntax	TimeResults=[datetime   datetime4   char_iso   char_usa   char_eur   char_jis   char_odbc]
Default	datetime
Values	datetime returns CS_DATETIME, an eight byte datetime datatype with a range of legal values from January 1, 1753, to December 31, 9999, and a precision of 1/300th of a second (3.33 milliseconds).  datetime4 returns CS_DATETIME4, a four byte datetime datatype with a range of legal values from January 1, 1900, to June 6, 2079, and a precision of one minute.  char_iso returns CS_CHAR, character data in the format <i>hh.mm.ss</i> .  char_usa returns CS_CHAR, character data in the format <i>hh:mm</i> [AM   PM].  char_eur returns CS_CHAR, character data in the format <i>hh.mm.ss</i> .  char_jis returns CS_CHAR, character data in the format <i>hh:mm:ss</i> .  char_odbc returns CS_CHAR, character data in the format <i>hh:mm:ss</i> .

## XNLChar

Specifies the maximum size of both char and binary results. If the maximum size is exceeded, the datatype is promoted to text and image, respectively.

Syntax	<code>XNLChar=<i>integer</i></code>
Default	256
Values	<i>integer</i> is a valid number between 256 - 2147483647 (two gigabytes).
Comments	Sybase recommends that this value match the maximum size of the char and binary datatypes of the back end database. It is common for this limit to be the same for the char and binary datatypes.

## XNLVarChar

Specifies the maximum size of both varchar and varbinary results. If the maximum size is exceeded, the datatype is promoted to text and image, respectively.

Syntax	<code>XNLVarChar=<i>integer</i></code>
Default	256
Values	<i>integer</i> is a valid number between 256 - 2147483647.
Comments	Sybase recommends that the value match the maximum size of the varchar and varbinary datatypes of the back end database. It is common for this limit to be the same for the varchar and varbinary datatypes.

## Logging properties

General server log file information	<p>Each log entry consists of a number of columns of data, each separated by a tab character. These columns appear in the following order:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 Record type</li><li>2 Date/Time</li><li>3 Service Library Name, Service Name, or Server Name</li><li>4 SPID (Server Process ID), the identifier for the current client connection</li><li>5 User ID</li></ol>
-------------------------------------	--

### 6 Application Name

### 7 Specific Information

The server defines the first six columns. However, the Specific Information column contains information specified by the logging properties. Logging properties exist at the server, service library, and service levels.

For detailed information about server properties and the server log file, see the *DirectConnect Server Administration Guide*.

### General log statistics information

All statistics properties record some identical types of data. You use these properties independently or in combination to record statistics at whatever level of granularity necessary to perform your analysis (see “Logging properties” on page 51).

The following table describes the log statistics properties.

**Table 2-1: Log statistics properties**

Property Name	Description
LogRequestStatistics	A DB2 access service property that records statistics about individual SQL requests.
LogTransferStatistics	A DB access service property that records statistics about individual transfer requests.
LogConnectionStatistics	AnDB2 access service property that records accumulated statistics about requests made by each client connection. Statistics are recorded when the client disconnects.
LogServiceStatistics	A DB2 access service property that records accumulated statistics about requests made by all connections to this DB2 access service.
LogSvcLibStatistics	A DB2 Access Service Library property that records accumulated statistics about requests made by connections to all DB2 access services within this DB2 Access Service Library.

Statistics are in standard format, tab-delimited columns in the server log file.

The following table shows the statistics recorded by the LogConnectionStatistics, LogRequestStatistics, and LogSvcLibStatistics properties.

**Table 2-2: LogSvclibStatistics Data**

Log Field Data	Description
Buffer size	The number of bytes of SQL (after transformation) in the SQL request sent to the database
Service processing time	The elapsed time in seconds from when the DB2 access service receives a SQL statement until it sends the statement to the database
DBMS processing time	The elapsed time in seconds from when the DB2 access service sends the SQL statement to the database until the database returns the first result row to the client application
Time to receive rows	The elapsed time in seconds from when the database sends the first result row to the client application until the client application receives the last result row (in the format <i>ss.nnn</i> )
Total processing time	The elapsed time in seconds from when the DB2 access service receives the SQL statement until the client application receives the last result row
Number of rows returned	The number of result rows returned to the client application
Number of conversion errors	The number of result rows that contain data conversion errors
Number of kilobytes returned	The number of kilobytes returned to the client application (to a scale of 3 in the format <i>n.mnn</i> )
Number of events	The total number of events that occurred during the time period
Number of successful connections	The total number of successful client connections that occurred during the time period
Maximum number of client connections	The greatest number of client connections at any given time during the time period

Logging properties control whether DB2 access service data is recorded in the server log file. For detailed information about the server log file, see the *DirectConnect Server Administration Guide*.

The subsection heading and the properties must appear in the DB2 Access Service Library configuration file as:

```
{Logging}  
LogConnectionStatistics  
LogReceivedSQL  
LogRequestStatistics  
LogServiceStatistics  
LogSvclibStatistics  
LogTargetActivity  
LogTransferStatistics  
LogTransformedSQL
```

## LogConnectionStatistics

Specifies whether the DB2 access service records accumulated statistics about all requests performed by a client connection.

Syntax                      LogConnectionStatistics=[no | yes]

Default                    no

Values                    no means connection statistics are not recorded.

yes means connection statistics are recorded.

Comments                 

- Connection statistics are recorded in the server log file when the client disconnects from the DB2 access service.
- You use this property to monitor the activity of particular clients.

## LogReceivedSQL

Specifies whether the DB2 access service records SQL statements when the statements are received from client applications.

Syntax                    LogReceivedSQL=[no | yes]

Default                    no

Values                    no means the DB2 access service does not record SQL statements when the statements are received.

yes means the DB2 access service records SQL statements when the statements are received.

## LogRequestStatistics

Specifies whether the DB2 access service records statistics about each SQL request.

Syntax `LogRequestStatistics=[no | yes]`

Default `no`

Values `no` means the DB2 access service does not record statistics about each request.  
`yes` means the DB2 access service records statistics about each request.

Comments

- SQL requests are recorded in the server log file when the requests occur.
- You use this property to:
  - Aid performance tuning on a specific type of request
  - Analyze data throughput
  - Monitor the types of requests by users

## LogServiceStatistics

Specifies how often the DB2 access service records accumulated statistics about requests made by all connections to the DB2 access service during the reporting interval.

Syntax `LogServiceStatistics=integer`

Range `0–2147483646`

Default `0`

Values *integer* is a number of seconds that specifies how often statistics are recorded in the server log file.

A value of 0 specifies that the DB2 access service does not record DB2 access service statistics.

Comments

- You use this property to:
  - Monitor the load on a particular DB2 access service
  - Monitor usage of a particular DB2 access service

For example, use this property to determine the time of day that the DB2 access service has the greatest usage.

- If the property value is greater than 0, the DB2 access service records the DB2 access service statistics shown in Table 2-2 on page 53.

## LogSvclibStatistics

Specifies how often the DB2 Access Service Library records accumulated statistics about requests made by connections to all DB2 access services associated with this DB2 Access Service Library during the reporting interval.

Syntax	LogSvclibStatistics= <i>integer</i>
Range	0–2147483646
Default	0
Values	<i>integer</i> is a number of seconds.

A value of 0 specifies that the DB2 Access Service Library does not record statistics in the server log file.

Comments	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If you enable both LogSvclibStatistics (service library-level) and LogServiceStatistics (service-level) properties, Sybase recommends that you set the LogSvclibStatistics property to the same property value as the LogServiceStatistics or a multiple thereof. For example, if you configure LogSvclibStatistics for 60 seconds, you then configure LogServiceStatistics for either 60, 120, 180 seconds and so on. If you use DirectConnect Manager to change these two property values, set the LogSvclibStatistics property last for better synchronization.</li> <li>• You use this property to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Monitor load on the entire DB2 Access Service Library</li> <li>• Monitor load on the target database through this DirectConnect server</li> </ul> </li> <li>• If the LogSvclibStatistics property value is greater than 0, the DB2 Access Service Library records totals of the statistics for all DB2 access services in the DB2 Access Service Library.</li> </ul>
----------	--

For example, if the DB2 Access Service Library contains DB2 access services named Service A and Service B, the data recorded for the maximum number of client connections would contain the total of the Service A maximum number of client connections plus the Service B maximum number of clients connections at any given time during the time period.

The following table shows DB2 Access Service Library statistics.



## LogTargetActivity

Specifies whether the DB2 access service records DB2 access service interactions with the target database.

Syntax LogTargetActivity=[no | yes]

Default no

Values no means the DB2 access service does not record DB2 access service interactions with the target database.  
yes means the DB2 access service records the following DB2 access service interactions with the target database:

- Login
- Logout
- Requests sent
- Results received

## LogTransferStatistics

Specifies whether the DB2 access service records statistics about transfers.

Syntax LogTransferStatistics=[no | yes]

Default no

Values no means the DB2 access service does not record transfer statistics.

yes means the DB2 access service records statistics about each transfer.

Comments The DB2 access service records transfer statistics as shown in the following table.

**Table 2-3: LogTransferStatistics data**

Log Field Data	Description
Buffer size	The number of bytes in the transfer statement received by the DB2 access service.
Transfer setup time	The elapsed time in seconds from when the DB2 access service receives a transfer statement until it issues the source select against the secondary database. This includes connection time to the secondary database.

Log Field Data	Description
Source DBMS processing time	The elapsed time in seconds from when the DB2 access service issues the <b>select</b> part of the transfer statement against the source database until it receives the first result row from the source of the transfer. This includes the time the DB2 access service takes to obtain datatype information for target columns.
Time to transfer rows	The elapsed time in seconds from when the source database returns the first row to the DB2 access service until the last row is inserted into the target of the transfer.
Total processing time	The elapsed time in seconds from when the DB2 access service receives the transfer statement until the last row of the transfer is inserted into the target database.
Number of rows transferred	The number of rows transferred.
Number of conversion errors	The number of rows that contain data conversion errors.
Command type	This is either bulk transfer or template transfer.

## LogTransformedSQL

Specifies whether the DB2 access service records SQL as it is transformed and sent to the target database.

Syntax                      LogTransformedSQL=[no | yes]

Default                     no

Values                      no means the DB2 access service does not record SQL as it is transformed and sent to the target database.

yes means the DB2 access service records SQL as it is transformed and sent to the target database.

## Target Interaction properties

These properties control how a DB2 access service interacts with the target database.

The subsection heading and the properties must appear in the service library configuration file as:

```
{Target Interaction}
Allocate
APPCSecurity
PasswordRequired
QuotedStringDelimiter
SQLTransformation
StopCondition
TargetDebug
TargetDecimalSeparator
TargetHasMixedData
```

## Allocate

Controls when a DB2 access service allocates and deallocates conversations with the target database system.

Syntax	Allocate=[connect   request]
Default	connect
Values	<p>connect indicates that a DB2 access service allocates the conversation when the client connects and holds it open for the duration of the client connection.</p> <p>request indicates that a DB2 access service allocates a new conversation each time the client application sends a request and deallocates the conversation after each request.</p>
Comments	See Chapter 5, “Understanding the Request Process” for more information on request processing.

## APPCSecurity

Controls how a DB2 access service handles advanced program-to-program communications (APPC) security when it allocates an LU 6.2 conversation.

Syntax	APPCSecurity=[pgm   none   same]
Default	pgm
Values	<p>pgm specifies that a DB2 access service sends both a user ID and password to the target database system when it establishes communications.</p> <p>none specifies that a DB2 access service sends neither a user ID nor a password to the target database system when it establishes communications.</p>

	same specifies that a DB2 access service sends a user ID, but not a password to the target database system when it establishes communications.
Comments	If the DB2 access service uses the TCP/IP protocol to connect to the target database, the DB2 access service ignores this property.

## PasswordRequired

	Specifies whether a DB2 access service requires a user-supplied password to allocate the conversation with the database. The DB2 access service sends the password to the database.
Syntax	PasswordRequired=[no   yes]
Default	no
Values	<p>no indicates that a DB2 access service attempts to connect to the database whether or not there is a password. However, if the database requires a password for login and none is provided, the database sends an error message to the client application.</p> <p>yes indicates that a DB2 access service checks for a password before it makes the APPC connection. If it does not find a password, the DB2 access service does not attempt to make a connection and sends an error message to the client application.</p>
Comments	The PasswordRequired property has no tie with the APPCSecurity property.

## QuotedStringDelimiter

	Specifies the character used for quoted strings.
Syntax	QuotedStringDelimiter= <i>char</i>
Range	0–1 characters
Default	' (single quote)
Values	<i>char</i> is the quoted string delimiter for your locale.
Comments	This property should match the setting configured during DB2 installation.

## SQLTransformation

Specifies the mode a DB2 access service uses for SQL transformation.

Syntax SQLTransformation=[passthrough | sybase]

Default passthrough

Values passthrough indicates that a DB2 access service sends all SQL statements to the database system as received, without transformation. A client application uses passthrough mode to gain direct access to DBMS capabilities.

sybase indicates that a DB2 access service performs SQL transformation on selected statements. It also allows the use of multi-part table names with the view command in SQL statements.

Comments

- See “SQL transformation modes” on page 107 for detailed information about passthrough and sybase modes.
- For backward compatibility only, the DB2 access service also accepts the following parameters:

[db2 | tsq10 | tsq11 | tsq12]

Setting to db2 or tsq10 is the same as setting to passthrough. For a description of tsq11 and tsq12, which are no longer supported and are identified here only for backward compatibility, refer to the *MDI Database Gateway User's Guide* for your DB2 database and platform.

## StopCondition

Specifies under what conditions a DB2 access service stops processing.

Syntax StopCondition=[error | none | warning]

Default error

Values error indicates that a DB2 access service stops processing results only when an error occurs.

none indicates that a DB2 access service does not stop processing results when errors or warnings occur.

warning indicates that a DB2 access service stops processing results when an error or warning occurs.

## TargetDebug

Specifies whether the mainframe access module (AMD2) runs a trace of the transaction program on the mainframe.

---

**Warning!** Do not change the default setting unless Sybase Technical Support instructs you to do so.

---

Syntax	TargetDebug=[none   statistics   time   trace]
Default	none
Values	none indicates that AMD2 does not run a trace except for anabend.  statistics indicates that AMD2 traces statistics.  time indicates that AMD2 traces absolute times at specific processing points.  trace indicates that AMD2 runs a full trace including statistics and time information.

## TargetDecimalSeparator

Specifies the character the target database uses to separate decimal numbers for presentation purposes. The target database does not store the target decimal delimiter character.

Syntax	TargetDecimalSeparator=[.   ,]
Default	. (period)
Values	A period (.) indicates that the target database uses a period as the decimal delimiter.  A comma (,) indicates the target database uses a comma as the decimal delimiter.

## TargetHasMixedData

Indicates whether the DB2 access service allows character strings returned in the sp\_columns catalog stored procedure (CSP) result set to contain a mixture of SBCS and DBCS characters. For information about sp\_columns, see sp\_columns on page 215.

Syntax	TargetHasMixedData=[no   yes]
Default	no
Values	<p>no means that character strings returned by sp_columns cannot contain a mixture of SBCS and DBCS characters.</p> <p>yes means that character strings returned by sp_columns can contain a mixture of SBCS and DBCS characters.</p>
Comments	The TargetHasMixedData property value must match the MIXED DATA option on the target database.

## Tracing properties

Tracing properties control whether DB2 access service data is written to the server trace file. For detailed information about the server trace file, see the *DirectConnect Server Administration Guide*.

The subsection heading and the properties must appear in the service library configuration file as:

```
{Tracing}
TraceEvents
TraceHostCom
TraceInterface
TraceTarget
```

Because tracing degrades performance, use tracing only when Sybase Technical Support instructs you to configure specific tracing properties.

---

**Warning!** To provide Sybase Technical Support with all necessary data, the server trace file will be allocated a maximum of 20MB of space. When the server trace file exceeds the maximum, it will be copied to a file with the same file name and with an “\_old” extension (<filename>\_old). See the *DirectConnect Server Administration Guide* for suggestions for deleting or backing up old log and trace files.

---

## TraceEvents

Specifies whether the DB2 access service traces the event handler layer of the DB2 Access Service Library.

Syntax TraceEvents=[no | yes]

Default no

Values no means the DB2 access service does not trace the event handler layer.  
yes means the DB2 access service traces the event handler layer.

Comments The DB2 access service traces Open Server calls such as connect, disconnect, language, and cursor events.

## TraceHostCom

Specifies whether the DB2 access service traces the host communication layer of the DB2 Access Service Library.

Syntax TraceHostCom=[no | yes]

Default no

Values no means the DB2 access service does not trace the host communication layer.  
yes means the DB2 access service traces the host communication layer.

Comments The DB2 access service traces all communications to and from the platform supporting the target database (LU 6.2 and TCP/IP communications).

## TraceInterface

Specifies whether the DB2 access service traces the interface layer of the DB2 Access Service Library.

Syntax TraceInterface=[no | yes]

Default no

Values no means the DB2 access service does not trace the interface layer.  
yes means the DB2 access service traces the interface layer.

Comments

- The DB2 access service traces all activity related to interfacing the DB2 Access Service Library and the target database such as Open Client DB-Library, and Open Client CT-Library, and TDS Library activity.



- TDS Library activity is written to a separate trace file named *tds.trc* which resides on the server in the same directory as the server trace file.
- If you change the `TraceInterface` property value from no to yes using DirectConnect Manager, the `Allocate` property setting determines when TDS tracing takes effect for the client connection:
  - If the `Allocate` property is set to request, the DB2 access service begins tracing to the *tds.trc* file with the next request.
  - If the `Allocate` property is set to connect, the client application must log out and log back in for the DB2 access service to begin TDS tracing.
- The TDS Library activity trace file does not wrap and needs to be deleted periodically. You delete the *tds.trc* file the same as you would the server trace file. See the *DirectConnect Server Administration Guide*.

## TraceTarget

Specifies whether the DB2 access service traces the implementation layer of the DB2 Access Service Library.

Syntax	<code>TraceTarget=[no   yes]</code>
Default	no
Values	no means the DB2 access service does not trace the implementation layer. yes means the DB2 access service traces the implementation layer.
Comments	The DB2 access service traces all database-specific target activity within the DB2 Access Service Library.

## Transfer properties

These properties control how a DB2 access service performs transfer processing.

The subsection heading for these properties must appear in the service library configuration file as:

```
{Transfer}
```

BulkCommitCount  
 TransferBatch  
 TransferErrorCount

## BulkCommitCount

Specifies the number of rows sent in a bulk transfer before a commit is issued.

Syntax BulkCommitCount=*integer*

Range 0–32767

Default 0

Values *integer* is the number of rows sent in a bulk transfer.

If the value is 0, the DB2 access service issues a commit at the end of the transfer. If the value is non-zero, the DB2 access service issues a commit after every *n* rows. For example, if BulkCommitCount is set to 50, a commit is issued after every 50 rows.

- Comments
- The BulkCommitCount property is useful when you make large transfers *to* Adaptive Server and, as a result, run out of page locks on SQL Server. Issuing a commit after every *n* rows clears the page locks.
  - With this property, after rows are committed, they cannot be rolled back. Therefore, if you set BulkCommitCount to a non-zero value and a transfer fails, the DB2 access service rolls back only the batch containing data since the last commit was issued.
  - Setting BulkCommitCount can reduce bulk transfer performance when transferring data *from* the secondary database into DB2. This occurs because the DB2 access service sends as many rows as possible to DB2 in a single transfer but never more than the BulkCommitCount setting. If setting BulkCommitCount reduces transfer performance to DB2, try increasing the BulkCommitCount setting until performance is similar to that achieved with BulkCommitCount=0.
  - For more information on bulk transfer copy, see Chapter 10, “Using Bulk Copy Transfer”.

## TransferBatch

Specifies how many destination-template transfer clauses can be batched in one request.

Syntax	<code>TransferBatch=<i>integer</i></code>
Range	0–32767
Default	1
Values	<i>integer</i> is a number of destination-template clauses.  If the value is 0, the DB2 access service sends all statements that fit in the request buffer.
Comments	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The DB2 access service accumulates the designated number of destination templates in its request buffer before executing each request.</li><li>• For more information about destination-template transfer, see Chapter 11, “Using Destination-Template Transfer”.</li></ul>

## TransferErrorCount

Specifies how many error rows are allowed during bulk copy transfer or destination-template transfer before processing stops.

Syntax	<code>TransferErrorCount=<i>integer</i></code>  where <i>integer</i> is a number of error rows.
Range	0–32767
Default	0
Values	<i>integer</i> is a number of rows with errors.  A value of 0 means transfers do not stop processing regardless of the number of errors encountered.
Comments	For detailed information about how the TransferErrorCount property affects transfers, see “TransferErrorCount property” on page 170.



# Querying and Setting Operating Values

This chapter describes how to use global variables and set statements to query and set operating values for your client connection.

This chapter includes the following topics:

Topic	Page
Querying global variables	69
Issuing set statements	70
Querying and setting properties	71
Querying and setting processing values	76

## Querying global variables

A user or client application can query a global variable to find the property and processing values that affect that client connection.

A global variable represents one of the following:

- A configuration property value
- Information about the processing state of the current connection
- The current value for a configuration property resulting from a set statement

## SQL transformation mode

A client application can query all global variables regardless of the SQL transformation mode in effect. However, the global variable statement must be the only statement in a request. For more information about SQL transformation modes, see “SQL transformation modes” on page 107.

## Syntax

Global variables are preceded by two “at” (@@) symbols and are not case sensitive.

To query a global variable, issue a SQL statement in the following form:

```
select @@ variable_name
```

where *variable\_name* is the name of the relevant global variable.

The access service returns the configuration property value or the processing information for the current connection.

For example, the SQL statement `select @@Allocate` returns the `Allocate` configuration property value of either `connect` or `request`.

## Issuing set statements

A user or client application can issue set statements to change values that only affect the current client connection. These values remain in effect only for the duration of the client connection or until another set statement is issued.

## SQL transformation mode

A client can set values regardless of the SQL transformation mode in effect. However, the set statement must be the only statement in a request. For more information about SQL transformation modes, see “SQL transformation modes” on page 107.

## Syntax

DB2 access service set statements are not case sensitive.

To set an DB2 access service configuration property value or processing value for the current connection, issue a set statement in the form:

```
set { property_name | processing_name } value
```

where:

- *property\_name* is the name of the configuration property.

- *processing\_name* is the name of the processing option.
- *value* is a valid value for the configuration property.

For example, the statement `set Allocate request` sets the `Allocate` configuration property value to `request`.

## Querying and setting properties

Some configuration property values can be queried or set using global variables and `set` statements. These properties appear grouped by category in the following sections:

- ACS (DB2 access service) required properties
- Target Interaction properties
- Client Interaction properties
- Catalog Stored Procedure properties
- Datatype Conversion properties
- Data Conversion Error properties
- Transfer properties

Configuration properties, global variables, and `set` statements are not case sensitive.

For explanations of configuration properties, see Chapter 2, “Creating and Configuring DB2 Access Services”.

### ACS (DB2 access service) required properties

The following table shows DB2 access service required properties and associated global variables and `set` statements.

**Table 3-1: DB2 Access Service required properties**

Configuration property	Global variable and set statement
DefaultClientCodeset	<code>select @@DefaultClientCodeset</code> <code>set DefaultClientCodeset codeset</code>

Configuration property	Global variable and set statement
DefaultTargetCodeset	select @@DefaultTargetCodeset No set statement

## Target Interaction properties

The following table shows Target Interaction properties and associated global variables and set statements.

**Table 3-2: Target Interaction properties**

Configuration property	Global variable and set statement
Allocate	select @@Allocate set Allocate {connect   request}
SQLTransformation	select @@SQLTransformation set SQLTransformation {passthrough   sybase}
StopCondition	select @@StopCondition set StopCondition {error   none   warning}
TargetDebug	select @@TargetDebug set TargetDebug {none   statistics   time   trace}
TargetDecimalSeparator	select @@TargetDecimalSeparator No set statement

## Client Interaction properties

The following table shows client interaction properties and associated global variables and set statements.

**Table 3-3: Client Interaction properties**

Configuration property	Global variable and set statement
ClientDecimalSeparator	select @@ClientDecimalSeparator set ClientDecimalSeparator <i>char</i>
GatewayCompatible	select @@GatewayCompatible No set statement
MaxResultSize	select @@MaxResultSize set MaxResultSize integer



Configuration property	Global variable and set statement
MaxRowsReturned	select @@MaxRowsReturned set MaxRowsReturned integer
MaxSvcConnections	select @@MaxSvcConnections No set statement
Quoted_Identifier	select @@quoted_identifier set Quoted_Identifier {no   yes}
SendWarningMessages	select @@SendWarningMessages set SendWarningMessages {no   yes}
ServiceDescription	select @@ServiceDescription No set statement
SvclibDescription	select @@SvclibDescription (This global variable applies to the DB2 Access Service Library as a whole.) No set statement
TextSize	select @@TextSize set TextSize integer
TransactionMode	select @@TransactionMode set TransactionMode {short   long}
Version	select @@Version No set statement Returns the current version string in effect. To find the default version, see sp_helpserver on page 242.

## Catalog Stored Procedure properties

The following table shows Catalog Stored Procedure (CSP) properties and associated global variables and set statements.

**Table 3-4: Catalog Stored Procedure properties**

Configuration property	Global variable and set statement
CSPCatalogQualifier	select @@CSPCatalogQualifier set CSPCatalogQualifier
CSPDBName	select @@CSPDBName set CSPDBName {NULL   dbname}

Configuration property	Global variable and set statement
CSPExclusions	select @@CSPExclusions set CSPExclusions {none   user   nonauth   nonauthpublic}
CSPIncludeAlias	select @@CSPIncludeAlias set CSPIncludeAlias {no   yes}
CSPIncludeSynonym	select @@CSPIncludeSynonym set CSPIncludeSynonym {no   yes}
CSPIncludeSystem	select @@CSPIncludeSystem set CSPIncludeSystem {no   yes}
CSPIncludeTable	select @@CSPIncludeTable set CSPIncludeTable {yes   no}
CSPIncludeView	select @@CSPIncludeView set CSPIncludeView {yes   no}
CSPQualByDBName	select @@CSPQualByDBName set CSPQualByDBName {no   yes}
DatatypeInfo	select @@DatatypeInfo set DatatypeInfo {transact   target}

## Datatype Conversion properties

The following table shows Datatype Conversion properties and associated global variables and set statements.

**Table 3-5: Datatype Conversion properties**

Configuration property	Global variable and set statement
BinaryResults	select @@BinaryResults set BinaryResults {binary   char}
DateResults	select @@DateResults set DateResults {datetime   datetime4   char_eur   char_iso   char_jis   char_usa}
DateTimeResults	select @@DateTimeResults set DateTimeResults {datetime   datetime4   char_eur   char_iso   char_jis   char_usa}

Configuration property	Global variable and set statement
DecimalResults	select @@DecimalResults set DecimalResults {autoconvert   char   int   real   float   money   money4   bcd}
FloatResults	select @@FloatResults set FloatResults {float   real   char}
GraphicResults	select @@GraphicResults set GraphicResults {binary   char}
Int2Results	select @@Int2Results set Int2Results {smallint   char}
Int4Results	select @@Int4Results set Int4Results {int   char}
RealResults	select @@RealResults set RealResults {float   real   char}
TimeResults	select @@TimeResults set TimeResults {datetime   datetime4   char_eur   char_iso   char_jis   char_usa}

## Data Conversion Error properties

The following table shows Data Conversion Error properties and associated global variables and set statements.

**Table 3-6: Data Conversion Error properties**

Configuration property	Global variable and set statement
CharConvertError	select @@CharConvertError set CharConvertError {reject   truncate}
DateTimeConvertError	select @@DateTimeConvertError set DateTimeConvertError {reject   null   default}
NumConvertError	select @@NumConvertError set NumConvertError {reject   null   default}

## Transfer properties

The following table shows Transfer properties and associated global variables and set statements.

**Table 3-7: Transfer properties**

Configuration property	Global variable and set statement
BulkCommitCount	select @@BulkCommitCount set BulkCommitCount <i>integer</i>
TransferBatch	select @@TransferBatch set TransferBatch <i>integer</i>
TransferErrorCount	select @@TransferErrorCount set TransferErrorCount <i>integer</i>

## Querying and setting processing values

The following table shows global variables and set statements used to query and set processing values for the client connection.

**Table 3-8: Global variables and set statements for processing values**

Global variable and set statement	Description
select @@AllResults set AllResults {autoconvert   char}	Returns group datatype conversions. Sets group datatype conversions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• autoconvert sets all datatype conversions to the default values.</li><li>• char sets all datatype conversions to CS_CHAR.</li></ul>
select @@CloseOnEndtran set CloseOnEndtran {on   off}	Returns how cursors behave when a commit is executed. Determines how cursors behave when a commit is executed: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• on (the default) causes all cursors to be closed.</li><li>• off causes cursors to remain open at their positions when the commit is executed.</li></ul>
select @@Connections No set statement	Returns the current number of connections to this DB2 access service.

Global variable and set statement	Description
select @@DefaultedRowCount No set statement	Returns the number of rows the DB2 access service returned with default values substituted for data conversion errors.
select @@Error No set statement	Reflects the message number of each event. A successful event returns a 0 (zero).
select @@MainframeVersion No set statement	Returns the version of MainframeConnect for DB2.
select @@noexec set noexec {on   off}	<p>Returns whether metadata are returned for a select statement result set.</p> <p>Determines whether metadata are returned for a select statement result set:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• on sets the DB2 access service to handle subsequent select statements such that no results rows are returned, but result set metadata are available.</li> <li>• off (the default) returns the DB2 access service to the normal mode of returning result sets.</li> </ul>
select @@RejectedRowCount No set statement	Returns the number of rows rejected by the DB2 access service due to data conversion errors.
select @@RowCount No set statement	Returns the number of rows affected by the last SQL statement processed.
select @@ServiceName No set statement	Returns this DB2 access service name.
select @@spid No set statement	Returns a unique positive integer identifier (server process ID) for the current client connection.
select @@TargetError No set statement	Returns the message number of the last target database error.



# Converting Datatypes

This chapter describes datatype conversions between DB2 and Open Client/Server

This chapter contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
Converting target datatypes to Open Client/Server datatypes	79
Converting Open Client/Server datatypes to target datatypes	83
Corresponding Open Client/Server and Adaptive Server datatypes	88

## Converting target datatypes to Open Client/Server datatypes

When you retrieve data from the target database, the DB2 access service converts the target data to default Open Client/Server datatypes for delivery to the client application. You can configure datatype conversions by:

- Changing the datatype conversion property values when you configure an access service. (For a complete description of datatype conversion configuration properties and values, see “Datatype Conversion properties” on page 44.)
- Setting the conversions required by a particular client application by issuing set statements from the client application.

## Issuing set statements to change datatype conversions

You can issue set statements to change one or more datatype conversions for the current client connection. These settings remain in effect only for the duration of the current client connection or until you issue another set statement.

For more information about set statements, see Chapter 3, “Querying and Setting Operating Values”.

## Single datatype conversions

You can set the datatype conversion of a specific datatype by issuing a set statement that contains the specific datatype configuration property and value.

For example, to set the datatype conversion of the DB2 FLOAT datatype to Open Client/Server CS\_CHAR datatype, issue the following statement:

```
set FloatResults char
```

where *FloatResults* is the datatype conversion configuration property that maps to the DB2 FLOAT datatype, and *char* is the property value that maps to the Open Client/Server datatype CS\_CHAR.

## Group datatype conversions

To change a group of datatype conversion settings to the default setting for each datatype or Open Client/Server CS\_CHAR, issue the following set statement:

```
set AllResults [autoconvert | char]
```

## Character representations

The following table lists the character representations that a DB2 access service returns to the client application when you choose *char* as the output type. The table includes configuration property values for date and time character forms. For example, DB2 DATE type can convert to Open Client/Server CS\_CHAR type in one of the four character formats shown in the table.

**Table 4-1: Character representations**

DB2 input type	Open Client/Server character form returned to the client application
DECIMAL (scale = 0)	$\pm n$
DECIMAL (scale > 0)	$\pm n.n$
DECIMAL (scale = precision)	$\pm .n$



DB2 input type	Open Client/Server character form returned to the client application
DATE	char_eur format <i>dd.mm.yyyy</i> char_iso format <i>yyyy-mm-dd</i> char_jis format <i>yyyy-mm-dd</i> char_usa format <i>mm/dd/yyyy</i>
REAL	$\pm n.nnnnnnnE\pm nn$
FLOAT	$\pm n.nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnE\pm nn$
INT	$\pm nnnnnnnnn$
SMALLINT	$\pm nnnnn$
TIME	char_eur format <i>hh.mm.ss</i> in 24-hour clock time char_iso format <i>hh.mm.ss</i> in 24-hour clock time char_jis format <i>hh:mm:ss</i> in 24-hour clock time char_usa format <i>hh:mm</i> [AM   PM] in 12-hour clock time
TIMESTAMP	char_eur format <i>dd.mm.yyyy hh.mm.ss</i> char_iso format <i>yyyy-mm-dd-hh.mm.ss.nnnnnn</i> char_jis format <i>yyyy-mm-dd hh:mm:ss</i> char_usa format <i>mm/dd/yyyy hh.mm</i> [AM   PM]

## Data conversion errors

A data conversion error occurs when a value is out of the valid range. For example, if a DB2 source column with a DATE datatype has a value of Jan 1, 1899, and the DB2 access service datatype conversion property DateResults is set to datetime4, a value error occurs because the DB2 DATE value cannot be expressed in an Open Client/Server CS\_DATETIME4 datatype.

---

**Note** When the appropriate DateTimeConvertError or NumConvertError property value is reject and DB2 returns results with data values that are out of range for the associated DB2 access service data conversion property value, the DB2 access service inserts a header row into the result set immediately after the rejected row. This results in an additional header row for every rejected row in the result set.

---

Configuration properties control the behavior of an access service when it encounters data conversion errors.

For example, when converting DB2 DATE or TIME values to Open Client/Server CS\_DATETIME values, an access service can insert default information, which is configured by data conversion error properties, for the unknown date or time.

For a description of data conversion error properties and associated values, refer to “Data Conversion Error properties” on page 41.

The following table indicates conditions that cause value errors.

**Table 4-2: Conversions that cause errors**

DB2 datatype & Open Client/Server conversion	DB2 value
FLOAT, REAL, or DECIMAL and FloatResults value is real	Greater than 3.402823466E38 or less than -3.402823466E38
DECIMAL, FLOAT, or REAL and DecimalResults value is money	Greater than 922337203685477.5807 or less than -922337203685477.5808
DECIMAL, FLOAT, REAL or INT and DecimalResults value is money4	Greater than 214748.3646 or less than -214748.3647
DATE and DateResults value is datetime	DATE value is less than January 1, 1753
DATE and DateResults value is datetime4	DATE value is less than January 1, 1900, or greater than June 6, 2079
TIMESTAMP and DateTimeResults value is datetime	TIMESTAMP year is less than 1753
TIMESTAMP and DateTimeResults value is datetime4	TIMESTAMP date is less than January 1, 1900, or greater than June 6, 2079

## FLOAT and REAL conversion

DB2 FLOAT and REAL datatypes have approximately the same precision but different ranges from the corresponding Open Client/Server types. Values that are valid in Open Client/Server may be out of range for DB2. The following table shows the approximate ranges for DB2 FLOAT and REAL datatypes, and Open Client/Server CS\_FLOAT and CS\_REAL datatypes.

**Table 4-3: Ranges for DB2 and Open Client/Server FLOAT and REAL**

DB2 datatype	Approximate range	Open Client/Server datatype	Approximate range
FLOAT	-7.2E75 to +7.2E75	CS_FLOAT	-1.7977E308 to +1.7977E308

DB2 datatype	Approximate range	Open Client/Server datatype	Approximate range
REAL	-7.2E75 to +7.2E75	CS_REAL	-3.4028E38 to +3.4028E38

## Real number testing

In DB2, real numbers (datatypes REAL, FLOAT, DOUBLE, and DOUBLE PRECISION) are stored as approximations. This means that equality tests on real numbers may not locate all rows expected. The recommended way of testing for a real number value is to use a range test. For example, if you want to locate all rows where the column “A” has a value of 1.2345678, issue the following select statement:

```
select.....from.....where a between 1.234567 and 1.234568
```

## Converting Open Client/Server datatypes to target datatypes

A DB2 access service converts or performs SQL transformation on incoming data it receives in a client request when the incoming data include:

- Data values embedded as strings within the text of select, insert, delete, update, and execute language commands
- Data values as parameters of RPC, cursor, or dynamic SQL commands
- Datatype names as part of create table or alter table commands

## Data values embedded as strings

This section describes datatype conversion and SQL transformation of data values embedded as strings in language commands.

## Datatype conversion

When a DB2 access service receives data values embedded in strings, it does not automatically convert the incoming data values. The client application must format the strings correctly with valid datatypes before sending them to the target database. The DB2 access service provides a string template for the target datatypes. To find the correct datatype, the client application receives this string template for the target datatypes from the `sp_columns` CSP.

## SQL transformation

When the access service receives a SQL command that has embedded data values, the SQL transformation mode in effect determines whether or not any transformation is applied to these values:

- If the access service is in `passthrough` mode, it does not perform transformation.
- If the DB2 access service is in `sybase` mode, it performs the following transformation:
  - Removes the currency symbol from money constants
  - Transforms quoted strings to quoting conventions specific to the target DBMS

For more information about SQL transformation modes, see “SQL transformation modes” on page 107.

---

**Note** Datatype constants are transformed only as shown in the preceding paragraphs. When passing datatype constants, the client must ensure that the constants are in the proper format required by the target DBMS.

---

## Data values received from the client as parameters

This section describes how the DB2 access service handles data values received from the client as parameters of RPC, cursor, or dynamic SQL commands.

---

**Note** Only CT-Library clients can issue cursor or dynamic commands. For DB-Library clients, this section applies only to RPC commands.

---

## Default datatype conversion

When a client application sends a parameter description as part of an RPC command, cursor command, or dynamic SQL command, the access service automatically converts Open Client/Server datatypes to default target DBMS datatypes. In most cases, Open Client/Server datatypes directly map to target datatypes.

## Client-specified datatype conversion

Some Open Client/Server datatypes do not directly map to target datatypes. For example, Open Client/Server CS\_DATETIME and CS\_DATETIME4 datatypes do not directly map to DB2 DATE, TIME, or TIMESTAMP datatypes.

When defaults are not appropriate for these datatype conversions, the CT-Library client can specify the intended DB2 datatype by using the usertype field in the parameter's CS\_DATAFMT structure. The client fills in the CS\_DATAFMT structure and a pointer to the structure is passed to the ct\_param Open Client function call.

The DB2 access service then converts the Open Client/Server datatype to the precise target datatype.

DB-Library clients cannot take advantage of this feature and are limited to the default datatype conversions.

## *usertype values*

The usertype field of the CS\_DATAFMT structure is a 32-bit integer.

To find the usertype value, the client application executes sp\_columns to obtain a description of the REMOTE\_DATA\_TYPE column from the sp\_columns result set. The REMOTE\_DATA\_TYPE column returns the integer ID of the ODBC (target) datatype.

The usertype value returned by sp\_columns uses various fields in the 32-bit integer for flags, precision and scale, or length. The least significant byte of the value specifies to which target datatype to convert the parameter. The client application places the value in the usertype field. If a 0 (zero) value is placed in the usertype field, the default conversion applies.

## For more information

For more information about the CS\_DATAFMT structure, ct\_param Open Client function call, and usertype field, refer to *Open Client Client-Library/C Reference Manual*. For more information about sp\_columns, see “sp\_columns” on page 215.

## Parameters related to graphic columns

When you configure an access service for an SJIS or EUCJIS character set, the access service performs double-byte character set (DBCS) translation on character parameters, including those related to graphic columns. The access service translates the contents of graphic columns to Kanji characters.

When you configure an access service for a single-byte character set (SBCS) code page, parameters related to graphic columns must be described as binary types. The access service stores binary data in the column without translation and returns the data exactly as it was sent. The number of bytes of data supplied for a binary parameter must be even.

## Datatype conversions from Open Client/Server to DB2

The following table lists the possible conversions from Open Client/Server datatypes to DB2 datatypes for parameters.

**Table 4-4: Datatype conversions from Open Client/Server to DB2**

Open Client/Server datatype	DB2 datatype
CS_BINARY	CHAR FOR BIT DATA (default), VARCHAR FOR BIT DATA, GRAPHIC, VARGRAPHIC, LONG VARGRAPHIC
CS_LONGBINARY	CHAR FOR BIT DATA (default), VARCHAR FOR BIT DATA, GRAPHIC, VARGRAPHIC, LONG VARGRAPHIC
CS_VARBINARY	CHAR FOR BIT DATA (default), VARCHAR FOR BIT DATA, GRAPHIC, VARGRAPHIC, LONG VARGRAPHIC
CS_BIT	SMALLINT
CS_CHAR	CHAR
CS_VARCHAR	VARCHAR
CS_LONGCHAR	CHAR (default), VARCHAR, GRAPHIC, VARGRAPHIC, LONG VARGRAPHIC
CS_DATETIME	TIMESTAMP (default), DATE, TIME

Open Client/Server datatype	DB2 datatype
CS_DATETIME4	TIMESTAMP (default), DATE, TIME
CS_TINYINT	SMALLINT (all numeric types)
CS_SMALLINT	SMALLINT (all numeric types)
CS_INT	INT (all numeric types)
CS_DECIMAL	DECIMAL (all numeric types)
CS_NUMERIC	DECIMAL (all numeric types)
CS_FLOAT	FLOAT (all numeric types)
CS_REAL	REAL (all numeric types)
CS_MONEY	DECIMAL (all numeric types)
CS_MONEY4	DECIMAL (all numeric types)
CS_TEXT	LONG VARCHAR
CS_IMAGE	LONG VARGRAPHIC

The default DB2 type correspondence does not have to be exact. For example, DB2 accepts either CS\_CHAR or CS\_VARCHAR for either a DB2 CHAR or VARCHAR column. It also accepts any numeric type for any numeric column.

## Datatype names

An access service receives datatype names as part of create table or alter table commands. If the DB2 access service is in passthrough mode, the datatype names are not modified. If the DB2 access service is in sybase mode, Open Client/Server datatype names are converted to the target-specific datatype names that correspond to the Open Client/Server datatypes. A target database might not be able to support all Open Client/Server datatypes, but permits conversion to an equivalent or compatible datatype. For example, the Open Client/Server CS\_MONEY datatype can be converted to a numeric (19,4) or equivalent datatype.

For more information about passthrough mode and sybase mode, see “SQL transformation modes” on page 107.

## Corresponding Open Client/Server and Adaptive Server datatypes

The following table shows corresponding Open Client/Server and Adaptive Server datatypes.

**Table 4-5: Open Client/Server and Adaptive Server datatypes**

<b>Open Client/Server datatype</b>	<b>Corresponding Adaptive Server datatype</b>
CS_BINARY	binary, varbinary
CS_LONGBINARY	NONE
CS_BIT	bit
CS_CHAR	char
CS_VARCHAR	varchar
CS_LONGCHAR	NONE
CS_DATETIME	datetime
CS_DATETIME4	smalldatetime
CS_TINYINT	tinyint
CS_SMALLINT	smallint
CS_INT	int
CS_DECIMAL	decimal
CS_NUMERIC	numeric
CS_FLOAT	float
CS_REAL	real
CS_MONEY	money
CS_MONEY4	smallmoney
CS_TEXT	text
CS_IMAGE	image



# Understanding the Request Process

This chapter presents an overview of the request process, including Application Program Interface (API) procedure calls and how they interact with the DB2 access service on a command-based level.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
Request types	89
Request processing flow	90
API calls	91
Managing transactions	94
Managing processing	94
Troubleshooting	104

## Request types

The DB2 access service processes the following types of requests:

- SQL statements:
  - As a language command
  - As a cursor command (CT-Library only)
  - As a dynamic command
- Catalog stored procedure (CSP) requests
- Remote procedure call (RPC) requests

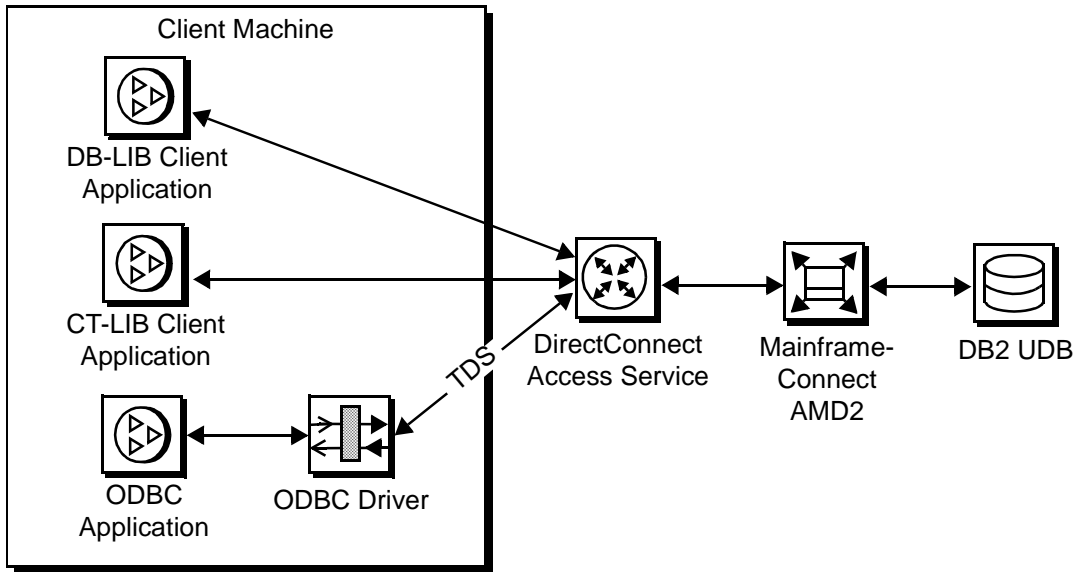
- Configuration property statements, such as:
  - set statement with a configuration property
  - select configuration property value (*@@global variable*)
- transfer statements

## Request processing flow

Request processing follows these steps:

- 1 The client application issues a request (for example, a select statement).
- 2 The client API (for example, CT-Library, DB-Library, or ODBC) receives the request and sends it to the DB2 access service.
- 3 The DB2 access service receives the request, transforms it (if needed), and executes the request through MainframeConnect for DB2 UDB.
- 4 After the request processes, the DB2 access service converts target datatypes to Open Server datatypes and returns the results to the client application.
- 5 The client application disconnects from the DB2 access service.

The following figure shows the processing flow of the APIs through DirectConnect to DB2.

**Figure 5-1: Processing flow through API to DB2 UDB**

For more information about Open Client/Server products, see the *Sybase Client Client-Library/C Reference Manual* and the *Sybase Server Server-Library/C Reference Manual*.

## API calls

This section identifies the client API procedure calls and provides the client programming references:

- DB-Library API, where client programming is done using the Open Client API following the standard Sybase Open Client methodology.

Procedure calls for the DB-Library API are explained in the *Microsoft SQL Server Programmers Reference* and the *Sybase Open Client DB-Library/C Reference Manual*.

---

**Note** For information about accessing database catalog information with applications that use CSPs, see Chapter 12, “Accessing Catalog Information with CSPs”.

---

- ODBC API where the client is using an ODBC application. Client programming is done using the ODBC API following the standard Sybase Open Client methodology.

Procedure calls for the ODBC API are described in the *Microsoft ODBC Programmer's Reference and SDK Guide*.

- CT-Library API where client programming is done using the CT-Library API following the standard Open Client methodology.

Procedure calls for the CT-Library API are described in the *Sybase Open Client Client-Library/C Reference Manual*.

---

Note For information about specific APIs, see the *Open Client Client-Library/C Reference Manual*.

---

## Managing transactions

To fully understand how properties in the DB2 access service interact to control the processing flow, you should first understand the following concepts:

- Request
- Unit of work
- Short and long transactions

These concepts are discussed in the following section.

### Request

A request is one or more database operations sent by the client application as one unit to the database. (For the DB2 access service, a database operation is usually a SQL statement.) During a request, the client application gives up control to the DBMS and waits for a response.

### Unit of Work

A unit of work is one or more requests that are committed or rolled back as a group.

If all the requests process successfully, the unit of work is committed, and the requested changes to the database are permanent. Depending on the setting of the `TransactionMode` property, either the client application or the DB2 access service issues the commit statement.

For more information about the `StopCondition` property see “`StopCondition` property” on page 95., For the conditions under which the DB2 access service stops processing, see “`StopCondition`” on page 61.

## Transactions

For the DB2 access service, a transaction is equivalent to a unit of work (one or more requests). A transaction can span many requests.

Depending on DB2 access service property settings, the `TransactionMode` property that governs transaction behavior can be set to either short or long.

### Short transactions

When short transactions are in effect, the DB2 access service is responsible for controlling the commitment of requests. After sending the request to the database, the DB2 access service automatically issues one of the following:

- A commit, if the request succeeds
- A rollback, if the request fails

---

**Note** While in short transaction mode, the request is a unit of work.

---

A begin transaction phrase can affect the behavior of a short transaction. If it receives a begin transaction phrase, the DB2 access service:

- Triggers a commit of all previous statements in the request.
- Temporarily sets `TransactionMode` to long, although a `select @@TransactionMode` command returns an answer of short mode. While in temporary long mode, if the batch processes successfully, the SQL statements are committed.

- Stays in temporary long transaction mode until a unit of work is completed with a commit or rollback. Then, the DB2 access service reverts TransactionMode to short.

---

**Note** Do not change configuration properties while the request is in temporary long mode. Once a commit or rollback occurs, the temporary long mode reverts to short mode.

---

## Long transactions

When long transactions are in effect, the client application is responsible for controlling when the transaction ends (by issuing either a commit or a rollback).

If the DB2 access service encounters a begin transaction phrase in a request, the phrase is ignored because the phrase does not affect the unit of work management.

The client application issues a commit or rollback statement for each transaction. When the client application closes its connection, the DB2 access service issues a rollback before exiting. Therefore, the client must commit any work that should be committed.

If the client application does not issue timely commits or rollbacks, then host resources, such as the APPC session or DB2 logging and locking, are held for an indeterminate amount of time. Therefore, long transactions can cause performance problems for other applications that need to access the same resource.

See the Managing processing section that follows for more information about the Allocate and StopCondition properties, and how they interact with the transaction mode.

## Managing processing

You can control processing by using configuration properties to determine the following:

- How many rows are returned (MaxRowsReturned)
- Whether to stop when an error occurs (StopCondition)
- How to allocate conversations with a target DB2 system (Allocate)

For more information about the preceding properties, see Chapter 2, “Creating and Configuring DB2 Access Services”.

---

**Note** To set values for properties in the configuration file, you must know the specific category the property belongs to, verify that the category exists in the file, and enter the property value under the category.

---

## MaxRowsReturned property

The MaxRowsReturned property specifies the maximum number of rows retrieved in a result set. (A result set is all or part of the results from a processed SQL statement.) However, one SQL request can produce multiple result sets.

---

**Note** If the number of rows exceeds the value of the MaxRowsReturned property, the DB2 access service returns the maximum number of rows and issues a warning message. However, the DB2 access service issues warning messages only when the SendWarningMessages property is enabled.

---

## StopCondition property

The StopCondition property specifies whether the DB2 access service stops processing a request when it encounters an error or a warning.

Valid values are:

- error
- warning
- none

If you specify none, processing continues even when errors occur. The StopCondition property is useful if you batch multiple statements in a request.

## Allocate property

The Allocate property specifies when the APPC conversation that exists between the DB2 access service and the target database system is allocated and deallocated. Valid values are connect and request.

- If you specify `connect` (the default), the APPC conversation remains allocated until the client issues some form of deallocation, such as an exit. As a result, fewer APPC connections are available, but overhead for each client is reduced.
- If you specify `request`, resources are generally released sooner and, as a result, more clients can access the target database at a time. However, overhead increases because of the repeated initiation of APPC conversations for each request handled. You can specify `request` for either short or long transactions.

## Effects of combined property settings on transaction behavior

The tables on the following pages show how combined configuration property settings can affect processing results. The first two tables are based on the `TransactionMode` property settings of short and long. The third table shows processing behavior when a `begin transaction` statement occurs.

### Transaction mode = short

The following four tables show the effects of combined `StopCondition` and `Allocate` properties, based on a `TransactionMode` setting of short.



**Allocate = request, StopCondition = error**

The following table shows the effects of a TransactionMode property setting of short, an Allocate property of request, and a StopCondition property of error.

**Table 5-1: Transaction mode = short, Allocate = request, StopCondition = error**

Condition/Status	Effects of settings on processing
Does a rollback occur on an error?	The transaction rolls back immediately.
What is the status of the connection after an error occurs?	The connection ends.
What happens if a begin transaction occurs?	A commit occurs and uses begin transaction behavior described in Table 5-9.
When the client application issues a commit or rollback, what happens?	A commit or rollback occurs.
If the request is a cursor or dynamic request, how does it behave?	The request behaves the same as TransactionMode=long.
In batch mode, what happens if an error occurs?	The batch ends and a rollback occurs.
When completed, is a batch job committed?	The batch commits if no errors occur.
After the batch commits, what is the status of the connection?	The connection ends.

**Allocate = request, StopCondition = none**

The following table shows the effects of a TransactionMode property setting of short, an Allocate property of request, and a StopCondition property of none.

**Table 5-2: TransactionMode = short, Allocate = request, StopCondition = none**

Condition/Status	Effects of settings on processing
Does a rollback occur on an error?	A rollback does not occur.
What is the status of the connection after an error occurs?	The connection continues.
What happens if a begin transaction occurs?	A commit occurs and uses begin transaction behavior described in Table 5-9.
When the client application issues a commit or rollback, what happens?	A commit or rollback occurs.

Condition/Status	Effects of settings on processing
If the request is a cursor or dynamic request, how does it behave?	The request behaves the same as TransactionMode=long.
<i>In batch mode</i> , what happens if an error occurs?	The batch continues executing.
When completed, is a batch job committed?	The batch is always committed.
After the batch commits, what is the status of the connection?	The connection ends.

### Allocate = connect, StopCondition = error

The following table shows the effects of a TransactionMode property setting of short, an Allocate property of connect, and a StopCondition property of error.

**Table 5-3: TransactionMode = short, Allocate = connect, StopCondition = error**

Condition/Status	Effects of settings on processing
Does a rollback occur on an error?	The transaction rolls back immediately.
What is the status of the connection after an error occurs?	The connection continues.
What happens if a begin transaction occurs?	A commit occurs and uses begin transaction behavior described in Table 5-9.
When the client application issues a commit or rollback, what happens?	A commit or rollback occurs.
If the request is a cursor or dynamic request, how does it behave?	The request behaves the same as TransactionMode=long.
While in batch, what happens if an error occurs?	The batch request ends.
When completed, is a batch job committed?	The batch commits if no errors occur.
After the batch commits, what is the status of the connection?	The connection continues.

### Allocate = connect, StopCondition = none

The following table shows the effects of a TransactionMode property setting of short, an Allocate property of connect, and a StopCondition of none.

**Table 5-4: *TransactionMode = short, Allocate = connect, StopCondition = none***

<b>Condition/Status</b>	<b>Effects of settings on processing</b>
Does a rollback occur on an error?	A rollback does not occur.
What is the status of the connection after an error occurs?	The connection continues.
What happens if a begin transaction occurs?	A commit occurs and uses begin transaction behavior described in Table 5-9.
When the client application issues a commit or rollback, what happens?	A commit or rollback occurs.
If the request is a cursor or dynamic request, how does it behave?	The request behaves the same as <i>TransactionMode=long</i> .
<i>In batch mode</i> , what happens if an error occurs?	The batch continues.
When completed, is a batch job committed?	The batch commit occurs, if no errors occur.
After the batch commits, what is the status of the connection?	The connection continues.

## Transaction mode = long

The following four tables show the effects of StopCondition and Allocate properties, based on a TransactionMode setting of long.

### Allocate = request, StopCondition = error

The following table shows the effects of a TransactionMode property setting of long, an Allocate property of request, and a StopCondition of error.

**Table 5-5: TransactionMode = long, Allocate = request, StopCondition = error**

Condition/Status	Effect of settings on processing
Does a rollback occur on an error?	A rollback does not occur.
What is the status of the connection after an error occurs?	The connection continues.
What happens if a begin transaction occurs?	The begin transaction is ignored.
When the client application issues a commit or rollback, what happens?	If TransactionMode was originally short, and cursors and dynamics were all freed, the commit or rollback occurs and TransactionMode changes back to short. If TransactionMode was originally long, then a commit or rollback occurs.
If the request is a cursor or dynamic request, how does it behave?	If TransactionMode was originally short, and cursors and dynamics were all freed, a commit occurs and TransactionMode changes back to short. If TransactionMode was originally long, then the connection behaves the same as Allocate=request until all cursors and dynamics are freed.
<i>In batch mode</i> , what happens if an error occurs?	The batch transaction ends.
When completed, is a batch job committed?	The batch does not commit.
After the batch commits, what is the status of the connection?	The connection ends if the commit or rollback occurs at the end of batch. Otherwise, the connection continues.

### Allocate = request, StopCondition = none

The following table shows the effects of a TransactionMode property setting of long, an Allocate property of request, and a StopCondition of none.

**Table 5-6: TransactionMode = long, Allocate = request, StopCondition = none**

Condition/Status	Effects of settings on processing
Does a rollback occur on an error?	A rollback does not occur.
What is the status of the connection after an error occurs?	The connection continues.
What happens if a begin transaction occurs?	The DB2 access service ignores the begin transaction command.
When the client application issues a commit or rollback, what happens?	If TransactionMode was originally short, and cursors and dynamics were all freed, the commit or rollback occurs and TransactionMode changes back to short. If TransactionMode was originally long, then a commit or rollback occurs.
If the request is a cursor or dynamic request, how does it behave?	If TransactionMode was originally short, and cursors and dynamics were all freed, a commit occurs and TransactionMode changes back to short. If TransactionMode was originally long, then the connection behaves the same as Allocate=request until all cursors and dynamics are freed.
While in batch, what happens if an error occurs?	The batch continues.
When completed, is a batch job committed?	The batch does not commit.
After the batch commits, what is the status of the connection?	The connection ends if the commit or rollback occurs at the end of the batch. Otherwise, the connection continues.

**Allocate = connect. StopCondition = error**

The following table shows the effects of a TransactionMode property setting of long, an Allocate property of connect, and a StopCondition of error.

**Table 5-7: TransactionMode = long, Allocate = connect, StopCondition = error**

Condition/Status	Effects of settings on processing
Does a rollback occur on an error?	A rollback does not occur.
What is the status of the connection after an error occurs?	The connection continues.
What happens if a begin transaction occurs?	The DB2 access service ignores the begin transaction command.
When the client application issues a commit or rollback, what happens?	If TransactionMode was originally short, and cursors and dynamics were all freed, the commit or rollback occurs and TransactionMode changes back to short. If TransactionMode was originally long, then a commit or rollback occurs.
If the request is a cursor or dynamic request, how does it behave?	If TransactionMode was originally short, and cursors and dynamics were all freed, the commit occurs and TransactionMode changes back to short. If TransactionMode was originally long, then the connection behaves the same as Allocate=request until all cursors and dynamics are freed.
While in batch, what happens if an error occurs?	The batch request ends.
When completed, is a batch job committed?	The batch does not commit.
After the batch commits, what is the status of the connection?	The connection continues.

**Allocate = connect, StopCondition = none**

The following table shows the effects of a TransactionMode property setting of long, an Allocate property of connect, and a StopCondition of none.

**Table 5-8: TransactionMode = long, Allocate = connect, StopCondition = none**

Condition/Status	Effects of settings on processing
Does a rollback occur on an error?	A rollback does not occur.
What is the status of the connection after an error occurs?	The connection continues.

Condition/Status	Effects of settings on processing
What happens if a begin transaction occurs?	The DB2 access service ignores the begin transaction command.
When the client application issues a commit or rollback, what happens?	If TransactionMode was originally short, and cursors and dynamics were all freed, the commit or rollback occurs and TransactionMode changes back to short. If TransactionMode was originally long, then a commit or rollback occurs.
If the request is a cursor or dynamic request, how does it behave?	If TransactionMode was originally short, and cursors and dynamics were all freed, a commit occurs and TransactionMode changes back to short. If TransactionMode was originally long, then the connection behaves the same as Allocate=request until all cursors and dynamics are freed.
<i>In batch mode</i> , what happens if an error occurs?	The batch continues.
When completed, is a batch job committed?	The batch does not commit.
After the batch commits, what is the status of the connection?	The connection continues.

### Effect of begin transaction command

The following table shows the effect on processing when a begin transaction command occurs in a request.

**Table 5-9: Effects of begin transaction command on processing**

<b>Condition/Status</b>	<b>When begin transaction occurs...</b>
Does a rollback occur on an error?	A rollback does not occur.
What is the status of the connection after an error occurs?	The connection continues.
What happens if another begin transaction occurs?	The DB2 access service ignores the begin transaction command.
When the client application issues a commit or rollback, what happens?	If TransactionMode was originally short, it changes back to short. If TransactionMode was originally long, then a commit or rollback occurs.
If the request is a cursor or dynamic request, how does it behave?	The request continues behaving as a short setting.
<i>In batch mode</i> , what happens if an error occurs?	The batch continues.
When completed, is a batch job committed?	The batch does not commit.
After the batch commits, what is the status of the connection?	The connection continues.

## Troubleshooting

You can troubleshoot processing problems by using server log and trace files.

Configuration properties control whether data is recorded in the server log file and server trace file for each logging and tracing option. To configure log and trace properties, edit the DB2 Access Service Library configuration file or use DirectConnect Manager.

For detailed information about DB2 Access Service Library and DB2 access service logging and tracing properties, see Chapter 2, “Creating and Configuring DB2 Access Services” in this manual.

For information about server logging and tracing properties, see the *DirectConnect Server Administration Guide*.



## Logging options

Log properties allow you to record information for DB2 access service administration. Logging options are controlled by the server, DB2 Access Service Library, and DB2 access service configuration properties. Each logging option requires the configuration property name and value.

## Tracing options

Trace properties allow you to record troubleshooting information for Sybase Technical Support.

---

**Warning!** To provide Sybase Technical Support with all necessary data, the server trace file will be allocated a maximum of 20MB of space. When the server trace file exceeds the maximum, it will be copied to a file with the same filename and with an “\_old” extension (<filename>\_old). See the *DirectConnect Server Administration Guide* for suggestions for deleting or backing up old log and trace files.

---

For information about configuration property syntax, see “Tracing properties” on page 63.



## Issuing SQL Statements

This chapter describes the SQL commands that you can issue, and how DirectConnect and the DB2 access service process these commands.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
SQL transformation modes	107
Command types	112

### SQL transformation modes

Every database has its own dialect of SQL. Adaptive Server uses a dialect of SQL called Transact-SQL (T-SQL). Both IBM and Sybase Adaptive Server SQL syntaxes support the ANSI SQL-1 standard. Thus, applications written for specific tables are relatively portable between Adaptive Server and DB2. However, the DB2 access service does not support all SQL statements. If unsupported extensions exist in a SQL statement, the DB2 access service passes the SQL statement to the target, which may accept it or return a syntax error.

To make the various dialects look like common SQL, the DB2 access service supports two transformation modes, called *sybase* and *passthrough*. The section called “Description of passthrough and sybase transformation modes” on page 108 describes these two modes in more detail.

Although the transformation mode primarily affects the way the DB2 access service treats incoming SQL statements, it also affects the following functional areas:

- Transaction management
- Datatype handling
- set statements
- Global variable processing

- DB2 stored procedures
- Catalog stored procedures (CSPs)
- System stored procedures
- Remote stored procedures (RSPs)
- Host-resident requests
- Interoperability with:
  - ASE/CIS (formerly OmniConnect)
  - ODBC driver
  - Replication Server

When you configure the DB2 access service with a specific transformation mode, that mode is effective for all client connections, unless you use a set statement to alter it for a specific connection.

Using the `SQLTransformation` property, you can specify how the DB2 access service processes SQL syntax. The `SQLTransformation` property is described on page 61.

The DB2 access service *never* transforms the following SQL statements:

- set statements
- select @@global variable statements
- transfer statements
- CSP requests

Instead, the DB2 access service processes these statements and takes any corresponding action needed.

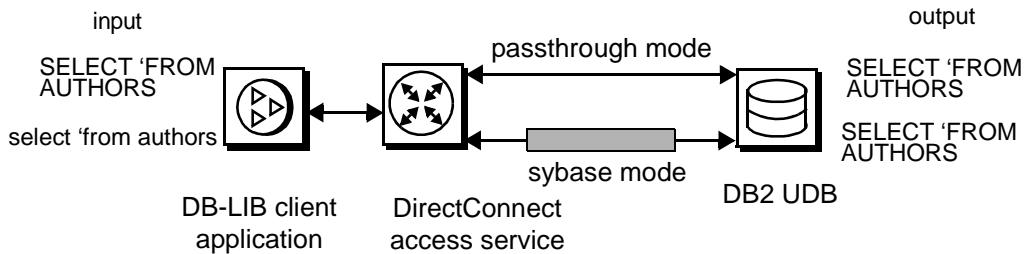
## Description of passthrough and sybase transformation modes

By translating dialect and syntax of the SQL statements the DB2 access service receives, passthrough and sybase transformation modes allow you to write applications that meet your needs. The following table shows you what to consider when choosing the transformation mode.

**Table 6-1: Selection criteria for transformation mode**

Use passthrough mode for...	Use sybase mode for...
Optimum performance	Portability across different database systems
Use of DB2-specific dialect features	Potential reuse of some existing applications written for Adaptive Server

As shown in the following figure, passthrough mode transfers similar dialect and syntax directly from the client application to the target database, saving time and resources. The sybase mode performs translation functions, changing the select statement from lowercase in the client application to uppercase in the target database.

**Figure 6-1: Passthrough and sybase transformation modes**

The following sections describe each transformation mode.

## passthrough mode

Use passthrough mode when you want the client to have direct access to the capabilities of a DBMS target. In fact, the client must issue statements in the target SQL dialect, because the DB2 access service does not perform any SQL transformation. The passthrough transformation mode does convert carriage returns and control characters (such as line feeds) to blanks, unless they are part of a quoted string. Otherwise, SQL statements pass untouched to the DBMS, and the results of each are returned to the client application.

The passthrough mode does not add semicolons between statements, nor does it check statement syntax. These tasks are performed entirely by the target database. However, passthrough mode does convert all SQL keywords to uppercase when the `DefaultTargetCodeset` property value is other than 500 and 37.

---

**Note** For backward compatibility with the MDI Database Gateway, the DB2 access service changes any transformation mode request for DB2 or TSQL0 to passthrough mode, the default.

---

## sybase mode

Use sybase mode for maximum compatibility between different target databases. This allows client applications that use sybase mode to potentially operate independently of the target they are accessing. CIS functionality in Adaptive Server and Replication Server require sybase mode when communicating with DirectConnect.

When sybase mode is in effect, the DB2 access service performs a limited amount of T-SQL syntax transformation on all the SQL text that it receives. This includes text found in the following commands:

- language
- cursor declare
- dynamic prepare
- dynamic execute immediate

In sybase mode, the DB2 access service transforms Sybase T-SQL it receives into syntax that the target DBMS supports. If the DB2 access service receives syntax that it does not recognize, it simply passes the text to the DBMS for execution. As a result, a single application should be able to generate somewhat complex queries that can apply consistently to all Sybase-provided DB2 access services.

---

**Note** Sybase mode supports multiple statements in a batch, with the exception of `set` and `select@@`.

---

Because an application uses this mode for purposes of compatibility with all DB2 access services provided by Sybase, it should not issue SQL commands that are unique to any single target DBMS.

Sybase mode makes the following transformations to SQL syntax:

- Transforms SQL commands shown in Table 7-1 on page 128. Unsupported syntax passes unchanged to the database for processing.
- Transforms parameter marker names beginning with the `@` character to a question mark (`?`).
- Removes T-SQL comments in the form `/*.....*/`.
- Converts T-SQL comparison operators (such as `!` and `=`) into the target database equivalent.
- Converts nonquoted tokens to uppercase, when needed.
- Converts single and double quotation marks used as string delimiters to the appropriate delimiter for the target DBMS.
- Strips dollar signs from money constants.
- Adds a semicolon at the end of every statement.

## Changing the transformation mode

To change the way the DB2 access service modifies SQL statements that are written for one database but are processed against another database, change the `SQLTransformation` property value.

Use one of the following methods to change the transformation mode:

- Issue a set statement to change the DB2 access service configuration until the connection is terminated or the mode is explicitly reset. For a description of set statements, see Chapter 3, “Querying and Setting Operating Values”.
- Change the DB2 access service configuration file and restart the DB2 access service. For information about how to change this file, see Chapter 2, “Creating and Configuring DB2 Access Services”.
- Create a new DB2 access service. For more information, see “How to create additional services” on page 19.

For a detailed list of supported SQL statements in DB2 and Adaptive Server, see Chapter 7, “Using Sybase Mode Commands”.

## Command types

As a developer, you can issue the following types of commands:

- Language commands
- Dynamic commands
- Cursor commands
- RPC requests

The first three topics are presented in this chapter. RPC requests are described in Chapter 8, “Issuing Remote Procedure Calls”.

## Language commands

Language commands are the simplest way to issue a request, but there are drawbacks to using them:

- You cannot control incoming datatype conversion.
- You must issue a request and finish processing it before you can issue another request.
- With certain commands, performance is slower than with dynamic and cursor commands.



Note that DirectConnect supports long character strings in language events for non-select statements: MainframeConnect for DB2 scans SQL statements for long character strings and replaces them with parameter markers. The long character string is then passed to DB2 with a SQL descriptor area (SQLDA).

---

**Note** Long character-string substitution is not done for select statements.

---

For information about how to issue a language command, see the appropriate Sybase documentation.

## Dynamic commands

Dynamic commands are available only with Open Client CT-Library System 10 or later. This section describes how DirectConnect processes dynamic commands through DB2.

Dynamic commands allow an application to execute SQL statements, such as insert, update, and delete, that contain variables with values of that are determined at runtime, in the following manner:

- 1 An application prepares a dynamic SQL statement by associating a SQL statement that contains placeholders with an identifier.
- 2 The statement goes through SQL transformation, where it is precompiled. The results depend on the SQL transformation mode.
- 3 The statement is stored in the DB2 access service, where it waits for values to replace the placeholders. The statement is then called a “prepared statement.”
- 4 Once the placeholders are replaced by values, the DB2 access service sends the statement to the target for execution.

Following is an example of a dynamic SQL command:

```
insert into table2 (col1, col2) values (SALES1, SALES2)
```

Following is the same command using parameter markers:

```
insert into table2 (col1, col2) values (?, ?)
```

The DB2 access service prepares the preceding statement. The statement executes and substitutes the values *SALES1* and *SALES2* into the parameter markers.

You can prepare and execute dynamic SQL statements by mapping these commands to DB2 capabilities. For example:

- You can prepare any non-select statement and execute the prepared statement as many times as you want.
- You can execute non-select statements through the dynamic command execute immediate capability.

For more information about how to prepare and execute statements with dynamic SQL, see the *Sybase Open Client Client-Library/C Reference Manual* and the *IBM DB2 SQL Reference Manual*.

## Capabilities and limitations of dynamic commands

Following is a description of dynamic command capabilities that DirectConnect supports, as well as the limitations that apply.

- You can only prepare use procedure, transfer, and most non-select SQL statements, such as insert, update, and delete statements. For a current list of SQL statements, see the *IBM DB2 SQL Reference manual*.
- The DB2 access service does not support the from clause in an update statement.
- The DB2 access service supports a maximum of fifty simultaneously-prepared dynamic statements per client connection.
- releases all resources associated with the prepared statement. The client application must also free its connection at this point so that CT-Library synchronizes with the actual state of both DB2 and the DB2 access service.
- The DB2 access service can support both short and long transactions in either allocate on request or allocate on connect mode.
- The first time an application issues a prepare (or declares a cursor), the DB2 access service forces TransactionMode for that connection to long. The Allocate property remains unchanged.
- The DB2 access service supports the execute immediate capability of a dynamic command, but the statement must not return data. (This is an Open Server restriction, not a DB2 access service limitation.) The DB2 access service allows a use procedure statement (as long as the stored procedure does not return data) but not a transfer statement.
- Parameter markers for dynamic commands are supported as follows:

- In sybase mode, parameter markers within the text can use Sybase conventions, such as @paramname. When necessary, the DB2 access service transforms parameters to the native syntax.
- In passthrough mode, parameter marker syntax is database-specific, so you must use question marks (?) as parameter markers.
- The DB2 access service also supports long character and binary parameters. Client applications must describe such properties as datatype CS\_LONGCHAR or CS\_LONGBINARY.

Consider the following restrictions:

- DB2 limits the SQL statement for any request (such as a prepare) to a total of 32,765 bytes. The maximum size of both data and null indicators in a row is 32,767 bytes.
- Open Server Tabular Data Stream (TDS) allows a maximum TextSize property of 32,000 bytes.

For general information about dynamic SQL and dynamic commands, see the *Sybase Open Client Embedded SQL Programmer's Guide* and the *IBM DB2 SQL Reference* manual.

---

**Note** The DB2 access service does not support Embedded SQL (ESQL). However, ASE/CIS does support Embedded SQL. You could configure ASE/CIS before DirectConnect to support this functionality.

---

## Using dynamic commands

When you write an application using dynamic commands, consider the following:

- The SQL statement being prepared must not be a select statement. Although Open Server allows a select statement to be prepared and a cursor to be opened on the prepared statement, the DB2 access service does not support this capability.
- Use DB2 syntax for the statement you are preparing when you are in passthrough transformation mode.

Following is an example of a code fragment that prepares and executes an insert statement.

```
/*  
** This sample code fragment illustrates the CT-Library calls
```

```
** used to prepare and execute a SQL statement. Error handling
** and other details are omitted for the sake of brevity.
** NOTE: Ellipses in the following represent code that you must supply.
*/
/*
** Prepare the statement. The statement we will prepare is:
** INSERT INTO TEST VALUES (?, ?, ?, ?).
** We will name the dynamic statement DYN1.
*/
retcode = ct_dynamic( cmd, CS_PREPARE, "DYN1", CS_NULLTERM,
    "INSERT INTO TEST VALUES (?, ?, ?, ?)", CS_NULLTERM );
/*
** Send the batch and check results.
*/
retcode = ct_send( cmd );
retcode = handlerresults( cmd );
/*
** Now execute the prepared statement with a set of parameter
** values. Allocate a CS_DATAFMT structure for each parameter.
*/
dfmt = malloc( 4 * sizeof(struct CS_DATAFMT) );
/*
** Fill in the structure and set the datalength, null indicator,
** and data value for each parameter.
*/
dfmt[0].datatype = CS_CHAR_TYPE;
dfmt[0].status = CS_INPUTVAL;
dfmt[0].maxlength = strlen( "collval" );
dataptr[0] = "collval";
datalen[0] = strlen( "collval" );
nullind[0] = 0;
...
/*
** Execute the statement.
*/
retcode = ct_dynamic( cmd, CS_EXECUTE, "DYN1", CS_NULLTERM,
    NULL, CS_UNUSED );
/*
** Describe and send the parameters.
*/
for (i=0; i<4; i++)
{
    retcode = ct_param( cmd, &dfmt[i], dataptr[0], datalen[i],
        nullind[i] );
}
/*
```

```
** Send the batch and check results.  
*/  
retcode = ct_send( cmd );  
retcode = handlerresults( cmd );
```

For more information about SQL processing, see the *IBM DB2 SQL Reference manual*.

## Error handling

Special error handling is not required.

## Cursor commands

Cursor commands, which are available only with Open Client CT-Library System 10 or later, give an application the power to retrieve and change data in a flexible way. For example, you can use cursor commands to process multiple result sets that are simultaneously available to the application, instead of one at a time using the language command.

Cursor commands require you to specify a SQL select statement that goes through SQL transformation, as follows:

- 1 The client application declares and opens the cursor command through the CT-Library routine `ct_cursor`.
- 2 When the cursor opens, a set of rows on the target is qualified. At that point, the select, update, or delete statement can initiate the following SQL statements to operate on specific rows in the set:
  - fetch
  - update
  - delete

---

**Note** The DB2 access service does not accept language event-based cursor commands. You must use `ct_cursor` commands.

---

DB-Library also supports a form of cursors but somewhat differently. The following table shows the differences between DB-Library cursors and CT-Library cursors.

**Table 6-2: Comparison of DB-Library and CT-Library cursors**

Characteristic	DB-Library-based cursor	CT-Library-based cursor
Relationship to Sybase SQL cursor	Called an “emulated” or “client-side” cursor, does not correspond to a SQL cursor.	Called a “native” or “server-side” cursor, corresponds to an actual SQL cursor.
Cursor row position	Defined by the client.	Defined by the server.
Fetch capability	Can fetch backward.	Can fetch forward only.
Memory requirements	More is required if querying large row sizes, unless a smaller number of rows in the buffer is specified.	No additional memory is required, regardless of the row sizes.
Access to Open Server application	Not available, unless required DB-Library stored procedures are installed.	Any System 10 or later Open Server application is coded to support cursors.

The DB2 access service supports CT-Library-based cursors by mapping the corresponding Open Server commands to DB2 capabilities. Because DB2 cursors do not provide all the capabilities of Open Server cursors, some limitations apply and are included in the following section.

For more information about DB2 capabilities related to commit and rollback statements, see the *IBM DB2 SQL Reference* manual.

## Capabilities and limitations of cursor commands

Following is a description of cursor capabilities that DirectConnect supports, as well as the limitations that apply:

- Only CT-Library client applications built on Open Client System 10 or later can use cursor capabilities.
- The DB2 access service supports a maximum of 50 simultaneously declared cursors for each client connection.
- In both sybase and passthrough modes, the DB2 access service does not send text with the cursor delete command; instead, it formulates the DBMS-specific equivalent of:
 

```
delete from <tablename> where current of cursor <cursorname>
```

 where <cursorname> is based on the current Open Server cursor ID.
- The DB2 access service does not support the from clause in an update statement.

- When the client application issues a rollback, DB2 closes and frees all cursors. The client application must also close and free its cursors at this point, so that CT-Library synchronizes with the actual state of the cursors.
- The client application can select the behavior of cursors after a commit; in other words, the cursor is either closed, or it is not closed and retains its position:
  - If the client executes a set `CloseOnEndtran` on command before any cursors were declared, then all cursors are closed—but not freed—after the commit. The client application closes its cursors so that CT-Library synchronizes with the actual state of the cursors. If the application does not execute the close on endtran statement, on is the default, so the statement executes anyway.
  - If the client executes a set `CloseOnEndtran` off command before any cursors are declared, then all cursors remain open and retain their current position after a commit occurs. This corresponds to the with hold clause in DB2.
- A parameter marker can vary depending on the transformation mode:
  - In passthrough mode, the marker is a question mark (?).
  - In sybase mode, the marker is an (@) “at” sign.
- The DB2 access service supports long character and binary parameters. Client applications must describe such parameters as `CS_LONGCHAR` or `CS_LONGBINARY`.

---

**Note** DB2 limits the SQL statement for any request (such as a cursor declare or update) to 32,765 bytes. With data and null indicators added, the total limit is 32,767.

---

- The DB2 access service does not allow you to declare a cursor in a dynamically prepared select statement.

## Using read-only cursors

When you write an application using read-only cursors, consider the following:

- The DB2 access service supports forward positioning (next) only. It does not support any other fetch option, such as previous, first, last, absolute, or relative.
- You must specify the cursor as `read_only` when declaring it.

- The read-only cursors are set for fetch only, so rows cannot be deleted.

The fetch count is automatically set to 1, unless you set it to a different number. If you change the fetch count to 20, DirectConnect fetches 20 rows at a time.

The following code fragment shows the sequence of CT-Library calls used to declare, open, fetch, close, and free a read-only cursor.

```
/*
** This sample code fragment illustrates the CT-Library calls that are
** used to declare, open, fetch, close and deallocate a read-only
** cursor. Error handling and other details are omitted for the sake of
** brevity.
** NOTE: Ellipses in the following represent code that you must supply.
*/

/*
** Initialize CT-Lib, establish a connection to DirectConnect.
*/
...
/*
** Set cursor behavior on COMMIT so that cursors will maintain
** their position and not be closed.
*/
retcode = ct_cmd_alloc( connection, &cmd );
strcpy( lang, "SET CLOSEONENDTRAN OFF" );
retcode = ct_command( cmd, CS_LANG_CMD, lang, CS_NULLTERM,
                     CS_UNUSED );
/*
** Send the batch and check results.
*/
retcode = ct_send( cmd );
retcode = handleresults( cmd );
/*
** We are going to declare the cursor on the statement:
**      SELECT * FROM AUTHORS WHERE STATE = ?
**
** Allocate a CS_DATAFORMAT structure for the parameter and fill
** in the relevant fields. In this case, the parameter is char(2).
*/
dfmt = malloc( sizeof(CS_DATAFMT) );
memset( dfmt, 0, sizeof(CS_DATAFMT) );
dfmt->status = CS_INPUTVALUE;
dfmt->format = CS_UNUSED;
dfmt->datatype = CS_CHAR_TYPE;
/*
** Declare the cursor, using cursor name "CURS1".
*/
```



```
retcode = ct_cursor( cmd, CS_CURSOR_DECLARE, "CURS1", CS_NULLTERM,
    "SELECT * FROM AUTHORS WHERE STATE = ?", CS_NULLTERM,
    CS_READ_ONLY );
/*
** Describe the parameter.
*/
retcode = ct_param( cmd, &dfmt, NULL, CS_UNUSED, 0 );
/*
** Set the fetch count to 20.
*/
retcode = ct_cursor( cmd, CS_CURSOR_ROWS, NULL, CS_UNUSED,
    NULL, CS_UNUSED, 20 );
/*
** Send the batch and check results.
*/
retcode = ct_send( cmd );
retcode = handlerresults( cmd );
/*
** Now open the cursor with host variable value = 'CA'
*/
strcpy( parmval, "CA" );
datlen = 2;
nullind = 0;
retcode = ct_cursor( cmd, CS_CURSOR_OPEN, NULL, CS_UNUSED, NULL,
    CS_UNUSED, CS_UNUSED );
/*
** Send the parameter.
*/
retcode = ct_param( cmd, &dfmt, parmval, datlen, nullind );
/*
** Send the batch and check results.
*/
retcode = ct_send( cmd );
retcode = handlerresults( cmd );
/*
** Describe and bind the result set.
** Find out how many columns there are in this result set.
** Make sure that there is at least 1 column.
*/
retcode = ct_res_info( cmd, CS_NUMDATA, &ncols, CS_UNUSED, NULL );
/*
** Allocate memory for each column's CS_DATAFMT, a data pointer,
** data length, and null indicator.
*/
...
/*
```

```

** Loop through the columns getting a description of each one and
** binding each one to a program variable.
*/
for (i = 0; i < ncols; i++)
{
    /*
    ** Get the column description. ct_describe() fills the
    ** datafmt parameter with a description of the column.
    */
    retcode = ct_describe( cmd, (i + 1), &(coldata[i].dfmt) );
    /*
    ** Update the datafmt structure to indicate the form in
    ** which we want to get the data. Set the datatype,
    ** format, maximum length, etc.
    */
    ...
    /*
    ** Allocate memory for the actual column data.
    */
    ...
    /*
    ** Now bind.
    */
    retcode = ct_bind( cmd, (i + 1), &(coldata[i].dfmt ),
        coldata[i].data, &( coldata[i].datlen ),&( coldata
        [i].nullind) );
}
/*
** Fetch 1 row.
*/
retcode = ct_fetch( cmd, CS_UNUSED, CS_UNUSED, CS_UNUSED,
    &rows_read );
/*
** Check the results of the fetch.
*/
if (retcode == CS_ROW_FAIL)
{
    /*
    ** Fetch failed.
    */
    ...
}
else if (retcode != CS_SUCCEED)
{
    if (retcode == CS_END_DATA)
    {

```

```
        /*
        ** End of data has been reached.
        */
        retcode = handlerresults( cmd );
        goto CLOSECURS;
    }
    else
    {
        /*
        ** Fetch failed.
        */
        ...
    }
}
/*
** We have a row of data.
*/
...
CLOSECURS:
/*
** Close and free the cursor.
*/
retcode = ct_cursor( cmd, CS_CURSOR_CLOSE, NULL, CS_UNUSED, NULL,
CS_UNUSED, CS_DEALLOC );
/*
** Send the batch and check results.
*/
retcode = ct_send( cmd );
retcode = handlerresults( cmd );
```

## Using updatable cursors

When you write an application using updatable cursors, consider the following:

- The DB2 access service supports only forward positioning with the fetch next option and with a fetch count of 1. It does not support any other fetch option (previous, absolute, relative). Therefore, it deletes or updates only the most recently fetched row.
- The SQL statement used for the cursor declaration must contain a for update of <column\_list> clause.
- You must specify the cursor as for\_update when you declare it.

- Use DB2 syntax for the statement being declared, which is determined by the transformation mode. When in sybase mode, the DB2 access service performs translation on the statement. Parameter markers can represent values that the application describes and sends to the DB2 access service. The DB2 access service then uses the parameter descriptions and values to create the final form of the update statement. Parameter markers are as follows:
  - In sybase mode, the marker is the (@) "at" sign.
  - In passthrough mode, the marker is a question mark (?).
- In both modes, the DB2 access service appends the where current of *<cursor\_name>* clause to the update statement.

Following is a code fragment that shows the sequence of CT-Library calls used to delete and update a row on an updatable cursor.

```

/*
** This sample code fragment illustrates the CT-Library calls
** used to update and delete a row on an updatable cursor.
**
** Error handling and other details are omitted for the sake of brevity.
** NOTE: Ellipses in the following represent code that you must supply.
**/

/*
** See the previous example for the cursor declare, open and
** fetch. The differences are:
** 1. The statement to declare is
** SELECT * FROM AUTHORS WHERE STATE = ? FOR UPDATE OF PHONE
** 2. The declare must specify CS_FOR_UPDATE instead of
   CS_READ_ONLY.
** 3. The setting of the fetch count is eliminated.
**/
/*
** Assume that you have fetched rows (one at a time) until you see
** a row you want to delete. This code deletes the most recently
** fetched row.
**/
retcode = ct_cursor( cmd, CS_CURSOR_DELETE, "AUTHORS",
    CS_NULLTERM, NULL, CS_UNUSED, CS_UNUSED );
/*
** Send the batch and check results.
**/
retcode = ct_send( cmd );
retcode = handleresults( cmd );
/*
** Fetch more rows until we see a row that we want to update.

```

```
*/
...
/*
** Update the most recently-fetched row. For this example, we
** will update the PHONE column in the AUTHORS table, and we
** will use a parameter in the update statement for the value of
** PHONE. Fill in the CS_DATAFMT structure for the parameter and
** the parmval, atlen, and nullind values.
*/
dfmt.status = CS_INPUTVALUE;
dfmt.datatype = CS_CHAR_TYPE;
strcpy( parmval, "303-443-2706" );
datlen = strlen( "303-443-2706" );
nullind = 0;
/*
** Send the cursor update.
*/
retcode = ct_cursor( cmd, CS_CURSOR_UPDATE, "AUTHORS",
    CS_NULLTERM, "UPDATE AUTHORS SET PHONE = ?", CS_NULLTERM,
    CS_UNUSED );
/*
** Send the parameter description and value.
*/
retcode = ct_param( cmd, &dfmt, parmval, datlen, nullind );
/*
** Send the batch and check results.
*/
retcode = ct_send( cmd );
retcode = handlerresults( cmd );
```

## Error handling for cursor declare and open commands

In general, the client application handles errors the same as any other CT-Library application. However, handling errors from a cursor declare or cursor open requires special consideration, as described next.

### Cursor declare

If a cursor declare fails because, for example, a table does not exist or the user does not have sufficient privilege to access a table, the application should issue a `ct_cancel` and drop the command. This cleans up the necessary structures in Open Client/Server and synchronizes the client with both the DB2 access service and DB2.

## Cursor open

If a cursor open fails because, for example, the number of parameters described in the open does not match the number of parameter markers in the declare, the client application should close and free the cursor and then drop the command. The client application should not issue a `ct_cancel` in this case.

---

**Warning!** If a cursor declare contains parameter markers but the cursor open does not describe any parameters, DirectConnect goes into an error state. As a result, the client's connection to the database is dropped when the next command is executed. To recover, the client application must close the connection to the DB2 access service and open a new one.

---

For more information about error handling, see the *Sybase Open Client Client-Library/C Reference Manual*.

# Using Sybase Mode Commands

This chapter describes the T-SQL syntax subset recognized in the Sybase SQL transformation mode. SQL commands, clauses, and other syntactical elements are presented in alphabetical order.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
T-SQL commands	128
alter table	129
begin transaction	130
commit transaction	131
create index	131
create table	132
create view	134
delete (cursor command)	135
delete (dynamic command)	136
delete (language command)	136
drop index	137
drop table	138
drop view	138
execute	139
execute	139
grant	139
insert (dynamic command)	141
insert (language command)	142
prepare transaction	143
revoke	143
rollback transaction	145
select	145
truncate table	147
update (cursor command)	148
update (dynamic command)	148
update (language command)	149
use	150

## T-SQL commands

Many of the commands use up to three-part table names. DB2 supports the following three-part naming convention:

- *location\_name* (database system name, current server)
- *authorization\_ID* (owner)
- *table\_name* or *view\_name*

---

**Note** All sybase mode commands are issued as language commands, unless otherwise noted.

---

The following table lists each command and its description.

**Table 7-1: Transact-SQL commands**

SQL command	Description
alter table	Adds new columns to an existing table.
begin transaction	Marks the starting point of a user-specified transaction.
commit transaction	Commits all work performed for this transaction.
create index	Creates a new index on a table.
create table	Creates new tables.
create view	Creates a new view.
delete (cursor command)	Removes rows from a table using a <i>cursor</i> command.
delete (dynamic command)	Removes rows from a table using a <i>dynamic</i> command.
delete (language command)	Removes rows from a table using a <i>language</i> command.
drop index	Removes an index from a table.
drop table	Removes a table.
drop view	Removes a view.
execute	Runs a system procedure or user-defined storage procedure.
grant	Assigns authorization to users.
insert (dynamic command)	Adds new rows to a table or view using a <i>dynamic</i> command.
insert (language command)	Adds new rows to a table or view using a <i>language</i> command.



SQL command	Description
prepare transaction	Checks to see if connections to databases are active.
revoke	Revokes authorization of users.
rollback transaction	Rolls back or aborts the current transaction.
select	Retrieves rows from the database objects.
truncate table	Truncates the table by removing all rows. This statement is not logged and is not part of any transaction.
update (cursor command)	Changes data in row made current by a read cursor (positional update).
update (dynamic command)	Changes data in existing rows using a <i>dynamic</i> command.
update (language command)	Changes data in existing rows using a <i>language</i> command.
use	Accesses an existing database.

For more information about the Sybase SQL transformation mode commands, see the *Sybase SQL Server Reference Manual*.

## alter table

Description	Using a <i>language</i> command, alter table adds new columns to an existing table.
Syntax	<pre>alter table [<i>database</i>.<i>owner</i>.]<i>table_name</i> add <i>column_name datatype</i> {null   not null} [<i>{, next_column}</i>...]</pre>
Parameters	<p><i>table_name</i> is the name of the table to be changed.</p> <p><i>column_name</i> is the name of a column to be added.</p> <p><i>datatype</i> is the datatype of the column. Use only system datatypes, except bit. Certain datatypes expect a length, <i>n</i>, in parentheses: <code>datatype(<i>n</i>)</code></p>

*null* | *not null*

specifies a null value if a user does not provide a value during an insertion and no default exists (for *null*), or that a user must provide a non-null value if no default exists (for *not null*).

*next\_column*

indicates that you can include additional column definitions separated by commas, using the same syntax described for a column definition.

**Examples**

The following example adds the `manager_name` column to the `publishers` table. For each existing row in the table, a null value is assigned to the new column.

```
alter table publishers
add manager_name varchar(40) null
```

**Usage**

- ASE?CIS sends the `alter table` command to DirectConnect as a language event.
- The following are not supported:
  - `add constraint`
  - `drop constraint`
  - `replace column name`
  - `partition` | `unpartition`
- Transformation adds parentheses when the `add column` option includes more than one column.

## begin transaction

**Description**

A DB2 equivalent of this command does not exist. The DB2 access service sends both `begin transaction` and `transaction_name` to the target as `begin transaction`.

**Syntax**

none

**Usage**

Not defined.

## commit transaction

Description	Commits the work resulting from the current transaction.
Syntax	<code>commit transaction {<i>transaction_name</i>}</code>
Parameters	<i>transaction_name</i> is the name assigned to the transaction. It must conform to the rules for identifiers that are described in the <i>Sybase SQL Server Reference Manual</i> .
Examples	<code>commit transaction</code>
Usage	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The DB2 access service accepts this statement and translates it to the DB2 commit statement.</li><li>• If a transaction is not currently active, this statement has no effect.</li><li>• In sybase mode, <i>transaction_name</i> is stripped from the statement before it is passed on the target.</li><li>• The DB2 access service converts both <code>commit transaction <i>transaction_name</i></code> and <code>commit transaction</code> without a transaction name to a commit statement.</li></ul>

## create index

Description	Using a <i>language</i> command, create index adds a new index to an existing table.
Syntax	<code>create [unique] index <i>index_name</i> on [[<i>database</i>.]<i>owner</i>.]<i>table_name</i> (<i>column_name</i> [, <i>column_name</i>]...)</code>
Parameters	<i>unique</i> is an optional keyword that prohibits duplicate index values (also called key values).  <i>index_name</i> is the name of the index. Index names must be unique within a table but not within a database.  <i>table_name</i> is the name of the table that contains the indexed column or columns.

*column\_name*

is the column or columns to be included in the index. Composite indexes are based on the combined values of up to 16 columns. The sum of the maximum lengths of all the columns used in a composite index cannot exceed 256 bytes.

## Examples

```
create index au_id_ind
  on authors (au_id)

create index ind1
  on titleauthor (au_id, title_id)
```

## Usage

- Columns of type bit, text, and image cannot be indexed.
- You cannot create an index on a view.
- The DB2 access service initially accepts the following T-SQL statement components but then strips them out of the statement:
  - clustered and nonclustered
  - *with { fillfactor = x, ignore\_dup\_key, sorted\_data }*
  - *on segment\_name*, which specifies the segment where the index is to be created

## create table

## Description

Creates a new table.

## Syntax

```
create table [database.[owner].]table_name (column_name datatype {null |
not null} [{, next_column }...]) [on segment_name]
```

## Parameters

*table\_name*

is the name of the new table. It conforms to the rules for identifiers and is unique within the database and to the owner.

*column\_name*

is the name of the column in the table. It conforms to the rules for identifiers and is unique in the table.

*datatype*

is the datatype of the column. Only system datatypes are used. As shown in Table 7-3 on page 134, several datatypes expect a length, *n*, in parentheses:

*datatype(n)*

***null / not null***

specifies a null value if a user does not provide a value during an insertion and no default exists (for null), or that a user must provide a non-null value if no default exists (for not null).

***next\_column***

indicates that you can include additional column definitions (separated by commas) using the same syntax described for a column definition.

**Examples**

```
create table titles
(title_id tid not null,
title varchar(80) not null,
type char(12) not null,
pub_id char(4) null,
price money null,
advance money null,
total_sales int null,
notes varchar(200)null,
pubdate datetime not null,
contract bit not null)
```

**Usage**

- T-SQL allows you to specify null or not null, with a default of not null. DB2 allows only not null to be specified, and the default is null. The following table shows how the DB2 access service transforms this clause.

***Table 7-2: Null transformations during T-SQL to DB2 create table***

<b>Transact-SQL specification</b>	<b>Transformed to...</b>
null	<nothing>
not null	not null
<nothing>	not null

- The following table shows the DB2 access service transformation of datatype specifications.

**Table 7-3: Datatype conversions during T-SQL to DB2 create table**

Transact-SQL datatype	DB2 datatype
tinyint	SMALLINT
smallint	SMALLINT
int	INT
numeric(p,s)	NUMERIC(p,s)
decimal(p,s)	DECIMAL(p,s)
float (double precision)	FLOAT
real	REAL
smallmoney	DECIMAL(10,4)
money	DECIMAL(19,4)
smalldatetime	TIMESTAMP
datetime	TIMESTAMP
char(n)	CHAR( <i>n</i> )
varchar(n)	VARCHAR( <i>n</i> )
text	LONG VARCHAR( <i>n</i> )
binary(n)	CHAR( <i>n</i> ) FOR BIT DATA
varbinary(n)	VARCHAR( <i>n</i> ) FOR BIT DATA
image	LONG VARCHAR ( <i>n</i> ) FOR BIT DATA
bit	SMALLINT

# create view

Description	Creates a new view.
Syntax	<pre>create view [<i>database_name</i>.]<i>[owner.]view_name</i> [(<i>column_name</i> [, <i>column_name</i>]...)] as select [distinct] <i>select_statement</i> [with check option]</pre>
Parameters	<p><i>view_name</i></p> <p>is the name of the view. The view name cannot include the database name. It must conform to the rules for identifiers.</p> <p><i>column_name</i></p> <p>is the name of the column in the view. It must conform to the rules for identifiers.</p> <p>as select</p> <p>begins the select statement that defines the view.</p>

	<p><code>distinct</code> specifies that the view cannot contain duplicate rows (optional).</p> <p><i>select_statement</i> completes the select statement that defines the view. It can include more than one table and other views.</p> <p><code>with check option</code> indicates that all data modification statements are validated against the view selection criteria. All rows inserted or updated through the view must remain visible through the view.</p>
Examples	<p>The following example creates the new view from old view.</p> <pre>create view new_view (col1, col2) as select col1, col2 from old_view</pre>
Usage	<p>You can use views as security mechanisms by granting authorization on a view but not on its underlying tables.</p>

## delete (cursor command)

Description	<p>Using a <i>cursor</i> command, delete removes a row from a table. The row affected must have been made current by a <i>read</i> cursor.</p>
Syntax	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. delete [[<i>database.</i>]<i>owner.</i>]{<i>table_name</i>   <i>view_name</i>}</li><li>2. delete [from] [[<i>database.</i>]<i>owner.</i>]{<i>table_name</i> <i>view_name</i>} where current of <i>cursor_name</i></li></ol>
	<hr/> <p><b>Note</b> Any valid object in the catalog can be substituted for <i>table_name</i> or <i>view_name</i>.</p> <hr/>
Parameters	<p><code>from</code> (after delete) is an optional keyword used for compatibility with other versions of SQL. Follow it with the name of the table or view from which you want to remove rows.</p> <p><code>where current of</code> is a standard where clause.</p>
Examples	<pre>declare c1 cursor for select * from tablea for update of col1 delete tablea where current of c1</pre>

Usage	The cursor can be reused multiple times before it is deallocated.
-------	---

## delete (dynamic command)

Description	Using a <i>dynamic</i> command, delete removes a row from a table.
Syntax	<pre>delete [[<i>database.</i>]owner.]{<i>table_name</i>   <i>view_name</i>} [where <i>search_conditions</i>]</pre> <hr/> <p><b>Note</b> Any valid object in the catalog can be substituted for <i>table_name</i> or <i>view_name</i>.</p> <hr/>
Parameters	<p><b>where</b> is a standard where clause.</p> <p><b><i>search_conditions</i></b> is a valid where clause component. It sets the conditions for the rows that are retrieved. A search condition can include column names, constants, joins, the keywords is null, is not null, or, like, and, or any combination of these items.</p>
Examples	<pre>delete from tablea where coll = "test"</pre>
Usage	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Following are relational operators that are supported in search conditions: =, &lt;&gt;, &lt;, &gt;, &lt;=, &gt;=, and LIKE.</li> <li>The prepared statement can execute multiple times before it is deallocated.</li> </ul>

## delete (language command)

Description	Using a <i>language</i> command, delete removes a row from a table.
Syntax	<pre>delete [from] [[database.]owner.]{table_name view_name} [where search_conditions]  delete [[database.]owner.]{table_name   view_name} [from [[database.]owner.]{table_name   view_name} [, [[database.]owner.]{table_name   view_name}]...] [where search_conditions]</pre>



Parameters	<p><b>from</b> (after <b>delete</b>)</p> <p>is an optional keyword used for compatibility with other versions of SQL. Follow it with the name of the table or view from which you want to remove rows.</p> <p><b>from</b> (after <i>table_name</i> or <i>view_name</i>)</p> <p>allows you to name more than one table or view to use with a <b>where</b> clause when specifying the rows to delete. The <b>from</b> clause allows you to delete rows from one table based on data stored in other tables, giving you much of the power of an embedded <i>select</i> statement.</p> <p><b>where</b></p> <p>is a standard <b>where</b> clause.</p> <p><i>search_conditions</i></p> <p>is a valid <b>where</b> clause component. It sets the conditions for the rows that are retrieved. A search condition can include column names, constants, joins, the keywords <b>is null</b>, <b>is not null</b>, <b>or</b>, <b>like</b>, <b>and</b>, or any combination.</p>
Examples	<pre>delete from authors where au_lname = "McBadden"</pre>
Usage	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• You cannot use <b>delete</b> with a multi-table view.</li><li>• If you do not use a <b>where</b> clause, all rows are deleted from the table or view that is named after the <b>delete</b> [from] T-SQL keyword parameter.</li></ul>

## drop index

Description	Removes an index from a table in the current database.
Syntax	<p><b>drop index</b> <i>table_name.index_name</i></p> <p>The preceding syntax works <i>only</i> in sybase mode.</p>
Parameters	<p><i>table_name</i></p> <p>is the table in which the indexed column is located. The table must be in the current database.</p> <p><i>index_name</i></p> <p>is the name of the index to be dropped.</p>
Examples	<pre>drop index authors.au_id_ind</pre>

Usage	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• You can specify multiple index names in T-SQL, but ODBC supports only a single name per statement. If multiple names are present, multiple ODBC statements are generated.</li><li>• ASE/CIS passes the drop index command to DirectConnect for OS/390 as a language event.</li><li>• To get information about existing indexes on a table, use: <code>sp_helpindex table_name</code></li></ul>
-------	--

## drop table

Description	Removes a table definition and all of its data, indexes, triggers, and authorization specifications from the database.
Syntax	<code>drop table [[database.]owner.]table_name</code>
Parameters	<i>table_name</i> is the name of the table to be dropped.
Examples	<code>drop table authors</code>
Usage	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• T-SQL allows you to drop multiple tables in one statement, but ODBC does not. If multiple tables are encountered, transformation generates multiple statements.</li><li>• ODBC allows the keywords <code>CASCADE</code> and <code>RESTRICT</code> to be used in the statement. Since T-SQL does not support this, the keywords are not generated during transformation.</li><li>• ASE/CIS passes the drop table command to DirectConnect for OS/390 as a language event.</li></ul>

## drop view

Description	Removes one or more views from the database.
Syntax	<code>drop view [databasename], [owner].view</code>
Parameters	<i>view_name</i> is the name of the view to be dropped. The name must be a legal identifier and cannot include a database name.

Examples	<code>drop view new_price</code>
Usage	Each time a view is referenced, another view or stored procedure checks the existence of the view.

## execute

Description	Runs a system procedure or a user-defined stored procedure.
Syntax	<p><i>Transact-SQL Syntax</i> [execute][@return_status = ]</p> <p>[[[server.]database.]owner.]procedure_name[; number] [[@parameter_name =] value   [@parameter_name =] @variable[output] [,[@parameter_name =] value   [@parameter_name =] @variable[output]...]]</p> <p>[with recompile]</p> <p><i>ODBC Syntax</i></p> <p>{CALL PROCEDURE(parm1_value, parm2_value, ..., parmN_value)}</p>
Usage	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• This transformation uses only the shorthand notation ODBC syntax.</li><li>• Procedure return values are not supported.</li><li>• Procedures that return multiple result sets are not supported.</li></ul>

## grant

Description	Assigns authorizations to users.
Syntax	<p>To grant authorization to access database objects:</p> <p>grant {all [privileges]} permission_list on {table_name   view_name}   stored_procedure_name to {public   name_list} with grant option</p> <p>To grant authorization to create database objects:</p>

```
grant {all [privileges] | command_list}
to {public | name_list}
```

---

**Note** Any valid object in the catalog can be substituted for *table\_name* or *view\_name*.

---

#### Parameters

*all*

when used to assign authorization to access database objects (first syntax format), *all* specifies that all privileges applicable to the specified object are granted or revoked.

*permission\_list*

is a list of authorizations granted.

*command\_list*

is a list of commands granted.

*table\_name*

is the name of a table in the database.

*view\_name*

is the name of a view in the current database. Only one view can be listed for each *grant* command.

*stored\_procedure*

is the name of a stored procedure in the database.

*public*

is all users of the “public” group, which includes all users of the system.

*name\_list*

is a list of users’ database names or group names or both, separated by commas.

*with grant option*

allows the users specified in *name\_list* to grant the privileges specified by *permission\_list* to other users.

#### Examples

```
grant insert, delete
on titles
to mary, sales

grant update
on titles (price, advance)
to public

grant create database, create table
to mary, john
```

```
grant all on titles
to public

grant all
to public

grant update on authors
to mary
with grant option

grant select, update on titles(price)
to bob
with grant option
```

**Usage**

- DB2 does not allow you to grant authorization to a stored procedure.
- You can substitute the word *from* for *to* in the grant syntax.
- You can only grant or revoke authorizations on objects in the current database.
- *Role\_name*, which allows you to grant authorizations to all users who have been granted a specific role, is not supported. However, if you include it in the command, an error does not occur.

## insert (dynamic command)

**Description** Using a *dynamic* command, insert adds a new row to a table or view.

**Syntax** `insert [database.[owner.]]{table_name|view_name}[(column_list)]  
values (? [, ?]...)`

---

**Note** Any valid object in the catalog can be substituted for *table\_name* or *view\_name*.

---

**Parameters**

*column\_list*

is a list of one or more columns to which data is to be added. The columns can be in any order, but the incoming data (whether in a values clause or a select clause) is in the same order.

*values*

is a keyword that introduces a list of expressions.

*?* (question mark)

specifies a parameter marker passed by the application.

Examples

```
insert titles
(title_id, title, type, pub_id, notes, pubdate,
contract)
values (?, ?, ?, ?, ?, ?, ?)
```

Usage

- Any valid object in the catalog can be substituted for *table\_name*, *view\_name*, and so forth.
- ASE/CIS passes the insert command to DirectConnect for OS/390 as the following series of dynamic SQL commands:

prepare

execute

close

deallocate

- The values in the values list are passed as dynamic SQL parameters.

## insert (language command)

Description

Using a *language* command, insert adds a new row to a table or view.

Syntax

```
insert [into] database.[owner.]{table_name|view_name}[(column_list)]
values (value1, [,value2]...)
```

---

**Note** Any valid object in the catalog can be substituted for *table\_name* or *view\_name*.

---

Parameters

into

is optional.

*column\_list*

is a list of one or more columns to which data is to be added. The columns can be in any order, but the incoming data (whether in a values clause or a select clause) is in the same order.

values

is a keyword that introduces a list of expressions.

Examples

```
insert titles (title_id, title, type, pub_id, notes,
pubdate,contract)
values (docid, docno, docdate)
```

Usage	Not defined.
-------	--------------

## prepare transaction

Description	Determines whether a server is still connected.
Syntax	prepare transaction (not supported)
Examples	None
Usage	Not supported.

## revoke

Description	Revokes authorizations from users.
Syntax	<pre>revoke [grant option for]{all [privileges]  <i>permission_list</i>} on {<i>table_name</i>   <i>view_name</i>}   <i>stored_procedure_name</i> from {public   <i>name_list</i>} [cascade] revoke {<i>all</i> [privileges]   <i>command_list</i>} from {public   <i>name_list</i>}</pre>
Parameters	<p><b>all</b></p> <p>(in the first syntax format) specifies that all privileges applicable to the specified object are revoked when used to revoke authorizations to access database objects.</p> <p>The second syntax format can revoke create command authorizations:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• When the System Administrator uses this command, all create authorizations are revoked.</li><li>• When the database owner uses this command, all create authorizations are revoked except create database.</li></ul> <p><i>permission_list</i></p> <p>is a list of authorizations to be revoked.</p> <p><i>command_list</i></p> <p>is a list of commands for which authorizations are to be revoked.</p> <p><i>table_name</i></p> <p>is the name of the specified table in the database.</p>

*view\_name*

is the name of a view in the current database. Only one view can be listed for each revoke statement.

*stored\_procedure*

is the name of a stored procedure in the database. Only one object can be listed for each revoke statement.

*public*

is all users of the “public” group, which includes all users of the system.

*name\_list*

is a list of users’ database names and group names, separated by commas.

*grant option for*

prohibits the users specified in *name\_list* from granting the privileges specified by *permission\_list* to other users.

*cascade*

revokes grant authorization for the privileges specified in *permission\_list* from the users specified in *name\_list*, and from all users to whom they granted privileges.

The cascading effect can happen even if it is not specified by the user. For example, UserA has granted UserB some privileges, and in turn, UserB granted some to UserC. If UserA is revoked, all privileges that UserA granted to UserB and UserB indirectly granted to UserC are revoked.

---

**Note** Consult the *IBM DB2 SQL Reference* manual to see how IBM implements DB2 authorization schemes.

---

**Examples**

```
revoke insert, delete
  on titles
  from mary, sales

revoke all on titles
  from public
```

**Usage**

- DB2 does not support the revoking of a stored procedure.
- Authorizations can only be revoked on objects in the current database.
- *grant* and *revoke* commands are order-sensitive. When a conflict occurs, the most recently issued command takes effect.
- The word *to* can be substituted for the word *from* in the *revoke* syntax.
- The DB2 access service does not support *role\_name*.



## rollback transaction

Description	Rolls back a user-specified transaction to the beginning of the transaction.
Syntax	<code>rollback {transaction   tran   work}</code> <code>[<i>transaction_name</i>]</code>
Parameters	<code>tran</code> is another term for transaction.  <code>work</code> is another term for transaction.  <code>transaction_name</code> is the name assigned to the transaction. It must conform to the rules for identifiers.
Examples	<code>rollback transaction</code>
Usage	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• In sybase mode, <i>transaction_name</i> is stripped from the statement before it is passed to the target.</li><li>• The DB2 access service converts <code>rollback transaction</code>, <code>rollback work</code>, and <code>rollback tran</code> statements to a <code>rollback</code> statement.</li></ul>

## select

Description	Retrieves rows from database objects. You can issue this command either as <i>language</i> command or a CT-Library <i>cursor</i> request.
Syntax	<code>select <i>select_list</i> [from [[<i>database.</i>]<i>owner.</i>]{<i>table_name</i>   <i>view_name</i>} [, [[<i>database.</i>]<i>owner.</i>]{<i>table_name</i>   <i>view_name</i>}...] [where <i>search_conditions</i>]</code>
Parameters	<code>select_list</code> is one or more of the following items: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• A list of column names in the order in which you want them returned</li><li>• An aggregate function</li><li>• Any combination of the items listed previously</li></ul> <code>from</code> indicates the particular tables and views to use in the <code>select</code> statement.

*table\_name, view\_name*

lists tables and views used in the select statement.

If more than one table or view is in the list, their names are separated by commas. Table names and view names are given correlating names. This is done by providing the table or view name, then a space, then the correlation name, such as:

```
select *  
    from publishers t1, authors t2
```

*search\_conditions*

sets the conditions for the rows that are retrieved.

A search condition can include column names, constants, joins, the keywords is null, is not null, or, like, and, or any combination of these items.

*group by*

finds a value for each group. These values appear as new columns in the results, rather than as new rows.

*order by*

sorts the results by columns.

*having*

sets conditions for the group by clause, similar to the way that where sets conditions for the select clause. There is no limit on the number of conditions that can be included.

*union*

returns a single result set that combines the results of two or more queries. Duplicate rows are eliminated from the result set unless the all keyword is specified.

*read only*

indicates that the cursor is a read-only cursor, and that updates cannot be applied to rows made current by it.

*update*

indicates that the cursor is an updatable cursor, and that the rows it makes current can be deleted or updated.

**Examples**

```
select count(*) from publishers for read only  
  
select pub_id, pub_name, city, state from publishers for  
read only  
  
select pub_name, pub_id  
    from publishers
```

```
select type, price from titles
where price > @p1 for update of price

select stor_id, stor_name from sales union
select stor_id, stor_name from sales_east
```

**Usage**

- The TEXTPTR() function cannot appear in the select list.
- All Adaptive Server 10.x aggregate functions are supported:
  - sum ( distinct )
  - avg ( distinct )
  - count ( distinct )
  - count (\*)
  - max (expression)
  - min (expression)
- The DB2 access service does not transform correlation names.
- You can issue the select command either as a language command or a client-based cursor request.
- If a cursor is passed a new set of parameters before it is opened, it can be reused multiple times.
- If passed as a cursor command, the data values used in the where clause search conditions are passed as cursor parameters. These parameters use the datatype associated with the column.
- Cursor parameters are indicated with an @ (at) symbol.
- Refer to sp\_capabilities for specific functions that the DB2 access service supports.

## truncate table

Description	Removes all rows from a table.
Syntax	truncate table <i>[[database.]owner.]table_name</i>
Parameters	<i>table_name</i> is the name of the table to be truncated.
Examples	truncate table authors

- |       |  |
|-------|--|
| Usage | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The client application passes the truncate table command to the DB2 access service as a language command.</li><li>• In sybase mode, the DB2 access service converts truncate table to a delete command without a where clause.</li></ul> |
|-------|--|

## update (cursor command)

Description	Changes data in a row made current by a read cursor command, either by adding data or by modifying existing data.
-------------	---

Syntax	<pre>update [[database.]owner.]{table_name   view_name} set column_name1 = @p1[, column_name2 = @p2]...</pre>
--------	---

---

**Note** Any valid object in the catalog can be substituted for *table\_name* or *view\_name*.

---

Parameters	<p><b>set</b></p> <p>specifies the column name and assigns the new value. The value passes as a cursor parameter.</p>
------------	---

Examples	<pre>update authors set au_lname = @p1</pre>
----------	--

The row made current by the cursor *authors\_cursor* is modified, and the column *au\_lname* is set to the value of the parameter @p1.

- |       |  |
|-------|--|
| Usage | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The cursor can be reused multiple times before it is deallocated.</li><li>• You can include a from clause in the update statement, but because DB2 does not support it, the DB2 access service ignores it.</li></ul> |
|-------|--|

## update (dynamic command)

Description	Using a <i>dynamic</i> command, update changes data in existing rows of the referenced table.
-------------	---

Syntax	<pre>update [[database.]owner.]{table_name   view_name} set column_name1 = ? [, column_name2 = ?]... [ where search_conditions... ]</pre>
--------	---

Parameters	<p><b>set</b> specifies the column name and assigns the new value. The value passes as a parameter.</p> <p><b>where</b> is a standard where clause.</p> <p><b>search_conditions</b> sets the conditions for the rows that are retrieved. A search condition can include column names, constants, joins, the keywords is null, is not null, or, like, and, or any combination of these items.</p>
Examples	<pre>update authors   set au_lname = ?   where au_id = ?</pre> <p>The <code>au_lname</code> column is set to the value of <i>&lt;parameter 1&gt;</i> (indicated by a “?”), where the value of <i>au_id</i> is equal to the value of <i>&lt;parameter 2&gt;</i> (indicated by the second “?”).</p>
Usage	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can include a from clause in the update statement, but because DB2 does not support it, the DB2 access service ignores it.</li> <li>You can substitute <i>table_name</i> and <i>view_name</i> with any valid object in the catalog.</li> <li>The following relational operators are supported in search conditions: =, &lt;&gt;, &lt;, &gt;, &lt;=, &gt;=, and LIKE.</li> </ul>

## update (language command)

Description	Changes data in existing rows, either by adding data or by modifying existing data. Use this as a <i>language</i> command.
Syntax	<pre>update [[database.]owner.]{table_name   view_name} set [[[[database.]owner.]{table_name. view_name.}] column_name1 = {expression1 NULL {(select_statement)}] [column_name2 = {expression2 NULL {(select_statement)}}]... [, [[database.]owner.]{table_name view_name}]...] [where search_conditions]</pre>
Parameters	<p><b>set</b> specifies the column name and assigns the new value. The value can be an expression or a null. When more than one column name and value pair are listed, they must be separated by commas.</p>

`where`

is a standard where clause.

*search\_conditions*

sets the conditions for the rows that are retrieved. A search condition can include column names, constants, joins, the keywords `is null`, `is not null`, `or`, `like`, `and`, or any combination of these items.

Examples

```
update authors
  set au_lname = "MacBadden"
  where au_lname = "McBadden"
```

Usage

- You can include a from clause in the update statement, but because DB2 does not support it, the DB2 access service ignores it.
- You cannot update views defined with the `distinct` clause. However, when the view is created, the `select language` command allows the term `distinct` to be used with it. For more information, see the *Sybase SQL Server Reference Manual*.

## use

Description

Accesses an existing database.

Syntax

`use database_name`

Parameters

*database\_name*

is the name of the database you want to access.

Examples

```
use authors
```

Usage

- The DB2 access service returns the database name as part of the result set in an `sp_sqlgetinfo` call. It is located in the `SQL_DATABASE_NAME` attribute.
- If you issue a `use database_name` command with more than 127 characters, DirectConnect stores only the first 127 characters that you enter on this command.

# Issuing Remote Procedure Calls

This chapter describes how any CT-Library application can generate remote procedure call (RPC) events. The RPC feature allows a stored procedure to initiate an event in a remote database—that is, to make a remote procedure call.

A client application can invoke an RPC to:

- Invoke an external stored procedure
- Execute a language statement as an RPC
- Execute a transfer request

This chapter contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
Setting up Adaptive Server and DirectConnect connections	152
Creating a SQL Server stored procedure	152
Configuring Adaptive Server for remote access	153
Defining the DirectConnect service as a remote server	153
Executing a SQL Server stored procedure	154
Executing a language statement as an RPC	154
Creating a transfer SQL request	157
Executing a language statement as an RPC	154
Using triggers	158

---

**Note** When Adaptive Server issues an RPC event to the DirectConnect DB2 access service, it tries to establish a connection using the same service name as the identifier for the Adaptive Server in the *sql.ini* file.

---

## Setting up Adaptive Server and DirectConnect connections

To set up Adaptive Server for RPCs against the DirectConnect access service, perform the following steps:

- 1 Create an Adaptive Server user ID and password that matches a DirectConnect service host user ID and password.  
  
For instructions on creating the ID and password, see your Adaptive Server documentation.
- 2 Configure Adaptive Server for remote access.
- 3 Define each DirectConnect service as a remote server.
- 4 Define connectivity between Adaptive Sever and the DirectConnect DB2 access service.

---

**Note** To set up connectivity for a remote server, see the appropriate Adaptive Server documentation for the platform on which your Adaptive Server resides.

---

## Creating a SQL Server stored procedure

The following example shows a SQL Server stored procedure that can execute a remote stored procedure (RSP). The SQL Server stored procedure must specify an existing RSP and provide any arguments that the RSP requires.

```
create procedure newcust @custname varchar(nn), @custno varchar
(nn) as
begin
    execute servername...addcust
    @addname=custname, @addno=@custno
end
```

where:

- @custname is the variable representing the customer name to be added.
- @custno is the variable representing the customer number to be added.
- servername specifies the DB2 access service instance to use. The three periods ( . . . ) following the *servername* are required.
- addcust is the stored procedure name on the host.



- *@addname* is the stored procedure variable representing the new customer name.
- *@addno* is the stored procedure variable representing the new customer number.

## Configuring Adaptive Server for remote access

To configure Adaptive Server for remote access, log in to Adaptive Server as an administrator and check the current `sp_configure` setting using the following command:

```
sp_configure 'remote access'
```

- If the returned value is 1, Adaptive Server is configured for remote access.
- If the returned value is 0, type the following steps:

a Enter:

```
sp_configure 'remote access',1
```

b Then restart Adaptive Server.

## Defining the DirectConnect service as a remote server

To define the DirectConnect DB2 access service as a remote server, enter each DirectConnect DB2 access service name in the Adaptive Server SYSSERVERS table using the following command:

```
sp_addserver service_name
```

where *service\_name* is the name of the DirectConnect service you want to set up as a remote server. The name is case sensitive and must match the name you used to define the connectivity between Adaptive Server and the DirectConnect DB2 access service.

To verify that the DirectConnect service is successfully defined as a remote server, type:

```
select service_name from sys.servers
```

If data rows return, you successfully defined the DirectConnect access service as a remote server.

When Adaptive Server issues an RPC to a DirectConnect DB2 access service, it attempts to connect using a service name identical to the Adaptive Server identifier in the *interfaces* file.

To support Adaptive Server RPC events, perform either one of the following procedures:

- Define a service within the DB2 Access Service Library using the same name as Adaptive Server.
- Set up service name redirection to redirect the Adaptive Server to the appropriate service.

## Executing a SQL Server stored procedure

To execute the preceding Adaptive Server stored procedure example using isql, connect to Adaptive Server and enter the following at the prompts:

```
C:>ISQL -Ssybone -User -Ppasswd
1> execute newcust xxxx,yyy
2> go
```

where:

- xxxx is the new customer name, such as Ajax Printing Company.
- yyy is the new customer number, such as 1234.

---

**Note** For backward compatibility, the following syntax is acceptable:  
use procedure newcust xxxx, yyy

---

## Executing a language statement as an RPC

To execute a SQL language statement to the DB2 access service through a SQL Server RPC, use the following syntax:

```
C:> isql -Ssqlserver -User -Ppassword
```

```
1> execute directconnect...dcon "select * from
    user.authors"
2> go
```

where:

- *directconnect* is the name of the remote server.  
The three periods ( . . . ) following *directconnect* are required.
- *dcon* is the special name, or keyword, of the RPC.

The DB2 access service RPC event handler is sensitive to several key RPC names. In this case, the RPC keyword *dcon* is a special name that DirectConnect recognizes. As a result, the DB2 access service translates the first parameter into a dynamic SQL statement, submits it to the target database, and then returns the result set to the client application.

---

**Note** For backward compatibility with the MDI Database Gateway, *pcsql* is recognized in place of the *dcon* keyword. For backward compatibility with Net-Gateway, *syrt* is recognized in place of the *dcon* keyword.

---

To execute a language statement as an RPC:

- 1 Adaptive Server determines if the remote server (in this case, *directconnect*) is configured as a remote server to Adaptive Server.
  - If the remote server is not configured, the request fails immediately.
  - If the remote server is configured, Adaptive Server checks for a site handler connection to the remote server.
- 2 Adaptive Server does one of the following:
  - If a site handler connection exists, Adaptive server connects to the remote server, triggering a connect event at the DirectConnect. If the connect event processes successfully, Adaptive Server triggers an RPC event at DirectConnect and submits the RPC *dcon*. The first parameter to the RPC is the dynamic SQL language statement that is executed.
  - If a site handler connection does not exist, Adaptive Server establishes one. This connection exists for the life of the RPC and is reused when Adaptive Server submits other RPCs.

## Rules for using language statements as RPCs

Adaptive Server has a strict model for processing language statements as RPC events. It connects to the remote server (DirectConnect) and submits the RPC. After results process, it disconnects.

These quick connects and disconnects are a basic part of the Adaptive Server RPC design to provide minimal network traffic.

## Validation

The user ID and password you use to sign on to Adaptive Server *must* be a valid DirectConnect target database user ID and password.

## Transformation mode and syntax

All SQL transformation rules apply:

- If DirectConnect is configured for passthrough mode, the SQL within the double quotes must comply with target SQL syntax.
- If DirectConnect is configured for sybase mode, the SQL must be in Sybase Transact-SQL dialect.

## Commitment control

Consider the following:

- If DirectConnect is configured for long transactions, the SQL submitted must not be sensitive to a commit. In other words, if the SQL is an insert statement that does not batch a commit into the statement, the insert rolls back using long transaction rules.
- If the DB2 access service is configured for short transactions, the SQL submitted is bound by short transactions, which supply a commit by default.

## Creating a transfer SQL request

The client application can create a stored procedure within Adaptive Server that invokes the DB2 access service transfer function. In this case, the DB2 access service receives the transfer command as an RPC event with the arguments shown in the following table:

**Table 8-1: Arguments for transfer command**

Argument	Definition
Argument 1	The secondary connection information ({to   from} "server userid pw")
Argument 2	Either the bulk copy target command (for example, with replace into) or the destination-template sourceselectstatement
Argument 3	Either the bulk copy sourceselectstatement or the destination-template sourceselectstatement

Following is an example of a Adaptive Server stored procedure that initiates a bulk copy transfer statement. The DB2 access service executes the transfer statement against DB2, and DB2 receives it as an RPC.

```
create procedure replauth as
begin
    execute servername...transfer
        "to 'servername2 userid password';",
        "with replace into authors;",
        "select * from authors;"
end
```

where:

- *replauth* is the name of the stored procedure.
- *servername* specifies the DB2 access service that handles the transfer. The three periods (...) following the servername are required. The DB2 access service recognizes anything other than *transfer* in the next position as the name of a stored procedure.
- *transfer* is the name of the RPC.
- *servername2* is the secondary database for the transfer command.

## Executing a transfer SQL request

As shown in the following example, to execute the *replauth* stored procedure using isql, connect to the Adaptive Server database and enter the following at the isql prompts:

```
C:>ISQL -Ssybone -User -Ppasswd
1> execute replauth
2> go
```

When Adaptive Server executes *replauth*, it passes an RPC to the DB2 access service. The DB2 access service then returns any result rows or messages to the client application, not to Adaptive Server.

For more information about transfers, see Chapter 9, “Understanding the Transfer Process”.

## Using triggers

You can set up any Adaptive server stored procedure as a trigger that executes automatically when the triggering condition is met.

The following example shows a trigger, which, when the phone column is updated in the authors table in Adaptive server, automatically calls an RSP named pchowdy. In turn, pchowdy updates the authors table on DB2, using au\_id to specify the row to update.

```
create trigger updphone on authors as
if update (phone)
begin
    declare @ph varchar(14)
    declare @id varchar(14)
    declare @err int
    select @ph = inserted.phone from inserted
    select @id = inserted.au_id from inserted
    execute servername...pchowdy @phone=@ph,
        @au_id=@id
    select @err = @@error
    if (@err >> 0)
    begin
        print 'error _ rolling back'
        rollback tran
    end
else
```

```
        commit tran  
    end
```

Once it is created, the updphone trigger starts up whenever phone is updated:

```
C:>ISQL -Ssybone -User -Ppasswd  
1>update authors  
2>set phone='xxx-xxx-xxxx'  
3>where au_id like 'yyy-yy-yyyy'  
4>go
```

---

**Note** The DB2 access service does not support a two-phase commit. The update can succeed and be committed on either platform, independently of the success or failure of the update on the other platform.

---

In the previous example, if the DB2 update fails, the DB2 access service rolls back the Adaptive Server transaction and shows the following message:

```
@ERR >> 0
```

For more information about RPCs, see the *Sybase Open Server Server-Library/C Reference Manual* or the *Sybase Open Client Client-Library/C Reference Manual*.





# Understanding the Transfer Process

This chapter describes several concepts of the transfer process.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
General description of the transfer process	161
Transfer targets	166
Datatype conversion for transfer processing	167
Transfer errors and error handling	167
Error reporting for transfer processing	169
TransferErrorCount property	170

## General description of the transfer process

The transfer process allows you to transfer rows and columns of data between tables in multiple databases from a client application. Based on your needs and limitations, you can select from one of two transfer options: bulk copy and destination-template.

## Bulk copy and destination-template transfer

Bulk copy transfer and destination-template transfer processes differ as follows:

- The bulk copy transfer process allows you to quickly and directly transfer large amounts of data that is compatible between the databases.
- The destination-template transfer process allows you the flexibility and control to perform some action on the data before sending it to the target database, by inserting it in a template.

The following table further describes the conditions that determine the type of transfer you select.

Table 9-1: Comparison of two transfer command types

Use bulk copy transfer to...	Use destination-template transfer to...
Execute the transfer quickly	Exercise more control over the transfer
Perform implicit datatype conversions	Move tables of data in which you need to explicitly specify datatype conversion, such as when the data is structurally incompatible
Move entire tables of data in which column types are compatible between the source and destination databases:	Perform arbitrary actions against a target database using input from the source database, such as moving tables when the source table has more columns than the target:
<div><div><div>Source</div><div><div>col1</div><div>col2</div></div></div><div><div>Target</div><div><div>col1</div><div>col2</div><div>col3 (if nullable)</div></div></div></div> <div><div>transfer to secondary_connection; with replace into target_table; select col1, col 2 from source_table</div></div>	<div><div><div>Source</div><div><div>col1</div><div>col2</div><div>col3</div></div></div><div><div>Target</div><div><div>col2</div><div>col3</div></div></div></div> <div><div>transfer to secondary_connection; select col2, col3 from source_table; insert into target_table values (?,?)</div></div>

**Note** In both types of transfer, the transfer statement must be the *only* statement in a request.

For detailed information about bulk copy transfer, see Chapter 10, “Using Bulk Copy Transfer”. For detailed information about destination-template transfer, see Chapter 11, “Using Destination-Template Transfer”.

Description of terms in the transfer process

Following are terms used in the transfer process discussion.

### **Primary database**

This refers to the DBMS in the transfer statement. For DirectConnect for DB2 access services, this is a DB2 database.

### **Secondary database**

This database is another DBMS that is defined in the connection string within the transfer statement. The secondary database can be a database that is targeted by another DB2 access service. *Always* specify the secondary database in transfer statements.

### **Source database**

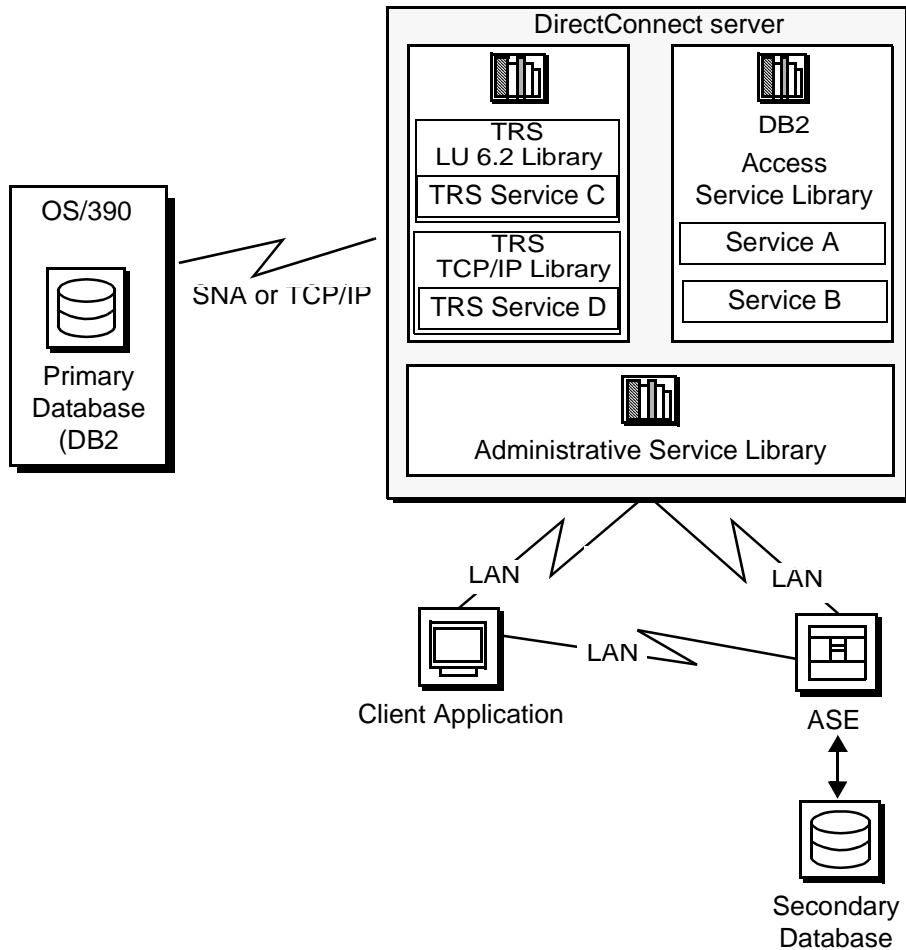
The source is the database the data is coming from.

### **Target database**

This database is where the data is being sent, also called the target. Either the primary or secondary database can be the source or target, depending on whether you use the transfer from or transfer to command.

The following figure shows the DB2 access service configured to access a particular DB2 database, which is the primary database. The secondary database is an Adaptive Server database located on the LAN. The client application can transfer data from DB2 to ASE, or from Adaptive Server to DB2.

**Figure 9-1: DB2 access service data transfer between databases**



During a transfer:

- Data flows from a table in the source database, through the DB2 access service, to the target database. Although the client application initiates the transfer, the data does *not* flow through it.
- The DB2 access service becomes a client to the secondary database.

## Transfer direction

You can transfer data in two directions:

- A transfer to statement transfers data from the *primary* database, DB2. This means that the primary database becomes the source database to the secondary database, which is the target.
- A transfer from statement transfers data from the *secondary* database. This means that the secondary database becomes the source database to the primary database, DB2, which is the target.

For example, when you execute a bulk copy transfer from statement, the secondary database (either Adaptive Server or another database) is the source of the data to be transferred. The primary database, DB2, becomes the destination database, or target.

---

**Note** For implications of using one transfer direction over another, see “Datatype conversion for transfer processing” on page 167.

---

## Unit of work

A unit of work is one or more requests that execute, commit, or roll back as a group. Following are descriptions of a unit of work for bulk copy and destination-template transfer.

### Bulk copy transfer

Unit of work is based on the setting of the BulkCommitCount property.

- If BulkCommitCount is set to 0, the entire transfer is treated as a unit of work. The DB2 access service performs a commit after the last row of data is inserted into the target table, even if value errors occurred for individual rows of the transfer.
- If BulkCommitCount is set to a non-zero value, each block of BulkCommitCount rows is treated as a unit of work. The DB2 access service issues a commit after each block of BulkCommitCount rows. For example, if BulkCommitCount is set to 50, each block of 50 rows is treated as a unit of work, and a commit is issued after each 50 rows.

For information about value errors, see the section “Value errors” on page 169.

## Destination-template transfer

When a destination-template transfer statement moves data from Adaptive Server to DB2, the DB2 access service automatically sets the `StopCondition` property to none. Subsequent commit and rollback processing is determined by whether short or long transactions are in effect:

- If short transactions are in effect, the DB2 access service issues a commit after each batch, whether or not errors occurred in the request.  
In this case, each batch of inserts is a unit of work.
- If long transactions are in effect, the DB2 access service issues a commit at the end of the entire transfer. Because `StopCondition` is set to none, the DB2 access service never issues a rollback. In this case, the entire transfer is a unit of work.

## Transfer targets

The transfer statement allows you to move data in either direction between DB2 and:

- Adaptive Server
- ASE/CIS (formerly OmniConnect)
- Other DB2 access service and legacy products or services:
  - DB2
  - Informix
  - Microsoft SQL Server
  - AS/400
  - Oracle
  - InfoHub
  - Any other database supported
- Any Open Server application that supports ASE.

## Datatype conversion for transfer processing

Datatype conversion is handled differently for the two transfer types. After converting the incoming source database datatypes into appropriate Open Client/Server datatypes, the DB2 access service does one of the following:

- For bulk copy transfer processing, the DB2 access service converts Open Client/Server datatypes into the actual datatypes of the target columns. If the source and target columns have incompatible datatypes, the transfer ends with an error.
- For destination-template transfer processing, the DB2 access service uses the datatype qualifiers specified with the question marks in the template. When the question marks do not have qualifiers, the DB2 access service uses the datatypes of the source to determine the default qualifiers.

When conversion fails, several properties, such as `DefaultDate`, `NumConvertError`, and `CharConvertError`, fill the field with the default value.

---

**Note** When you transfer data between two DirectConnect DB2 access services (such as DB2 to AS/400, AS/400 to DB2), Sybase recommends that you execute the transfer from command from DB2 to guarantee native datatype mapping. Also, the transfer from command is the only way you can transfer text and image columns between DB2 access services.

---

## Transfer errors and error handling

Transfer processing errors can occur due to:

- Structural errors, for which the DB2 access service cancels the transfer process *before* any rows are transferred
- Value errors, which occur on a row-by-row basis *during* the transfer process

Each of these transfer error types is explained in the following sections.

### Structural errors

A structural error can be one of two types:

- Incompatible datatypes
- An incompatible number of columns

## Incompatible datatypes

Datatypes are incompatible when source and target table datatypes cannot be mapped to one another. For example, binary to datetime transfers are not allowed.

- In bulk copy transfers, before the DB2 access service moves any data from the source database to the target database, the DB2 access service compares datatypes in the source to datatypes in the target.
- In destination-template transfers, the DB2 access service compares the source table datatypes to the qualifiers set in the destination-template statement.

For bulk copy and destination-template transfer types, if any columns have incompatible datatypes, the DB2 access service cancels the transfer, without attempting to transfer any rows.

## Incompatible number of columns

When the DB2 access service detects an unequal number of columns between the source and the target, a structural error can occur.

- For bulk copy transfer:
  - If the number of source columns exceeds the number of target columns, the DB2 access service cancels the transfer.
  - If the number of target columns exceeds the number of source columns, processing continues if all of the extra columns of the target table accept nulls. If any one of the extra columns in the destination table does not accept nulls, the DB2 access service cancels the transfer.
- For destination-template transfer:
  - If the number of columns returned by the `sourceselectstatement` exceeds the number of question marks in the destination-template transfer statement, the DB2 access service cancels the transfer.
  - If the number of question marks in the destination-template transfer statement exceeds the number of source columns, the keyword `null` replaces the extra question marks for each row of the transfer.



## Value errors

Value errors occur during transfer processing when the value being inserted has one of the following characteristics:

- It cannot be converted to the target column's datatype.
- It is out of range for the target column's datatype.

The DB2 access service handles these errors using the following properties:

- CharConvertError
- NumConvertError
- DatetimeConvertError
- DefaultDate
- DefaultTime
- DefaultNum

If the `SendWarningMessages` property is set to yes, the DB2 access service sends a message to the client application when it encounters value errors.

In addition, as mentioned in “Datatype conversion for transfer processing” on page 167, the preceding properties can be used to fill in default values when datatype conversion fails during both types of transfer.

For more information about properties, see Chapter 2, “Creating and Configuring DB2 Access Services”.

For information about values that cause errors for DB2 access service during bulk copy transfer, see “Datatype error conditions” on page 183.

Details of which particular values cause errors are DB2 access service-specific.

## Error reporting for transfer processing

You can use one of three methods to obtain error information about transfer processing:

- Include the `with report` phrase in the transfer statement. When you include this phrase, the DB2 access service returns a result set containing one VARCHAR column and one row that indicates the number of rows transferred, rejected, and modified during processing.

- Immediately after a transfer process, execute the following:  

```
select @@RejectedRowCount
```

```
select @@DefaultedRowCount
```

These global variables return the number of rejected or defaulted rows.
- Set `SendWarningMessages` to yes, so that the DB2 access service returns warning messages to the client when data conversion errors occur.

## TransferErrorCount property

During transfer processing, the DB2 access service automatically sets the `StopCondition` property to none. Then, it uses the value set in the `TransferErrorCount` property to determine how many error rows are allowed before processing stops. You can set this value with the following statement:

```
set TransferErrorCount nnn
```

The default setting is 0 (zero), which causes the DB2 access service to ignore errors.

This chapter describes the bulk copy transfer statement.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
General description of bulk copy transfer	171
Syntax for bulk copy transfer statements	172
Processing bulk copy “transfer from” statements	175
Processing bulk copy “transfer to” statements	177
Process flow of bulk copy transfer statements	180
Datatype error conditions	183

## General description of bulk copy transfer

The bulk copy transfer process initiates a direct transfer of data between two databases from the client application. Bulk copy transfer allows you to use SQL statements to:

- Append rows (insert)
- Replace existing rows (replace)

Use the bulk copy transfer statement to copy large amounts of data between similar tables.

## General rules for bulk copy transfer

When you use a bulk copy transfer statement, the following restrictions apply:

- The transfer statement must be the only statement in a request.

- The table into which you want to transfer data (the target table) must already exist; the transfer statement does not create new tables in the transfer target.
- The structure of the target table must be compatible with the structure of the source table. For more information, see “Structural errors” on page 167.

## Syntax for bulk copy transfer statements

The required syntax for a bulk copy transfer statement is:

```
transfer [with report]  
{to | from} 'secondaryname userid password';  
with {insert | replace | truncate} into tablename;  
sourceselectstatement
```

where:

- **transfer** is the command to initiate a data transfer.
- **with report** is an optional phrase specified in the first line of the transfer statement. It instructs the DB2 access service to return processing information to the client application, after the transfer completes processing.

This information is returned as a result set consisting of a VARCHAR column and a single row. The row contains the number of rows transferred, rejected, and modified during processing.

- {**to** | **from**} indicates the direction of the transfer:
  - **to** specifies that the data transfer originates from the primary database and sends data to the secondary database.
  - **from** specifies that the data transfer originates from the secondary database and moves data to the primary database.
- '*secondaryname userid password*' is a three-part character string, enclosed in single or double quotes in the order shown, that provides the information needed to connect to the secondary database:

- *secondaryname* is the name used to identify the secondary database, which can be an DB2 access service connected to another database. This is the name of an entry in your platform-specific interface file, such as *sql.ini* in Windows.
- *userid* and *password* must be valid on the secondary database. You can substitute an asterisk for *password*, if a password is not set.
- with {insert | replace | truncate} into specifies whether the data is appended onto the target table (insert) or the existing data is deleted and replaced (replace). The truncate option is equivalent to replace, except when the target is Adaptive Server, in which case the truncate option causes the DirectConnect to issue a truncate command against the target table, rather than delete.

---

**Note** In a transfer to Adaptive Server, the replace option deletes rows in the target table. The truncate option truncates the target table (and is faster than delete), but a truncation cannot be rolled back if a subsequent error occurs. For all other targets, replace and truncate are equivalent.

---

- *tablename* specifies the table into which data is inserted or replaced.
- *sourceselectstatement* specifies a SQL statement that is executed against the source database to produce the result set used in the transfer. This statement can be as complex as the source database will accept, including stored procedures. SQL transformation is not performed on the *sourceselectstatement*. It must be in the source database's SQL dialect, such as T-SQL.

## Examples

This section contains some examples of bulk copy transfer statement syntax that are submitted through ISQL. The following table shows the database and user information used in the examples.

**Table 10-1: Information used for bulk copy transfer examples**

Transfer components	Primary database	Secondary database
Database	DB2 UDB	Adaptive Server
User ID	db2user	ssuser
Password	db2pass	sspass
Service Name	db2	ss
Table Names	db2table1, db2table2, db2table3	sstable1, sstable2,sstable3
Column Names	db2col1, db2col2, db2col3,...	sscol1, sscol2, sscol3,...

---

**Note** The following examples assume that the source and target databases are datatype-compatible.

---

## Example #1

Task: Transfer data from DB2 to append to a Adaptive Server table.

```
c:>isql -Sdb2 -Udb2user -Pdb2pass
1>transfer to 'ss ssuser sspass' ;
2>with insert into sstable1 ;
3>select * from db2table3
4>go
```

Result: Data from the DB2 table named db2table3 is appended to the Adaptive Server table sstable1.

## Example #2

Task: Transfer data from Adaptive Server to replace data in DB2.

```
c:>isql -Sdb2 -Udb2user -Pdb2pass
1>transfer from 'ss ssuser sspass' ;
2>with replace into db2table1 ;
3>select * from sstable3
4>go
```

Result: Data from the Adaptive Server table named sstable3 replaces the data in the DB2 table db2table1.

## Example #3

Task: Transfer data from two tables in DB2 to a single Adaptive Server table.

```
c:>isql -Sdb2 -Udb2user -Pdb2pass
1>transfer to 'ss ssuser sspass' ;
2>with insert into sstable1 ;
3>select a.ssno, a.name2, b.empid
4>from db2table1a, db2table2b
5>where a.ssno=b.ssno
6>go
```

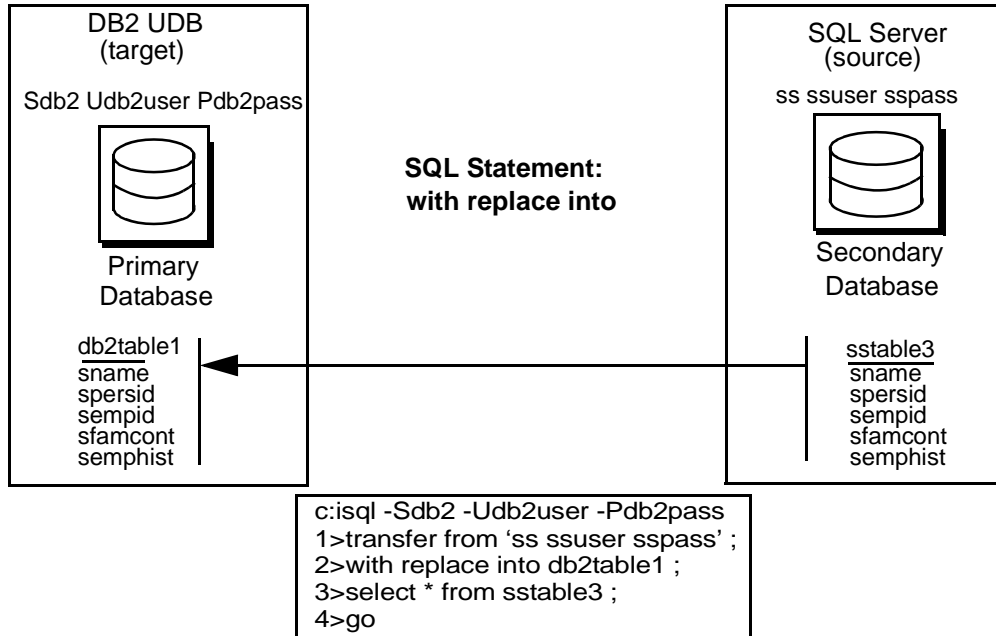
Result: A social security number (ssno), a name (name2), and an ID (empid) are selected from two DB2 tables, based on a join of social security numbers. The information is appended to the Adaptive Server table called sstable1.

## Processing bulk copy “transfer from” statements

Use transfer from when you want to transfer data *from* a secondary database, either Adaptive Server or another database through another DB2 access service, to the primary database. The primary database, DB2, is the target and is implied in the transfer statement; the secondary and source database is specified in the transfer statement.

The following figure shows the data flow of one of the preceding transfer from examples, which transfers data from sstable3 in Adaptive Server to replace data in the DB2 table named db2table1.

**Figure 10-1: DB2 bulk copy transfer from statement**



## Datatype conversion for “transfer from” processing

The DB2 access service performs datatype conversions for bulk copy transfer from statements. These conversions are defined within the DB2 access service and are not affected by the settings of the datatype conversion configuration properties and set statements.

Each DB2 access service specification will include specific definitions of datatype mapping for that target DBMS. The DB2 access service converts these datatypes into the actual datatypes of the target columns. If the DB2 access service cannot convert the columns, the DB2 access service ends the transfer with an error.

The DB2 access service performs datatype conversions for bulk copy transfers. These conversions are defined within the DB2 access service and are not affected by the settings of the datatype conversions configuration properties. Each DB2 access service specification includes specific definitions of datatype mapping for that target DBMS.



The following table shows the acceptable Open Server datatypes that the DB2 access service can convert into corresponding DB2 datatypes. To save space in this table, the CS\_ prefix is removed from Open Server datatypes, and similar DB2 datatypes are combined.

**Table 10-2: Open Server to DB2 datatype conversions**

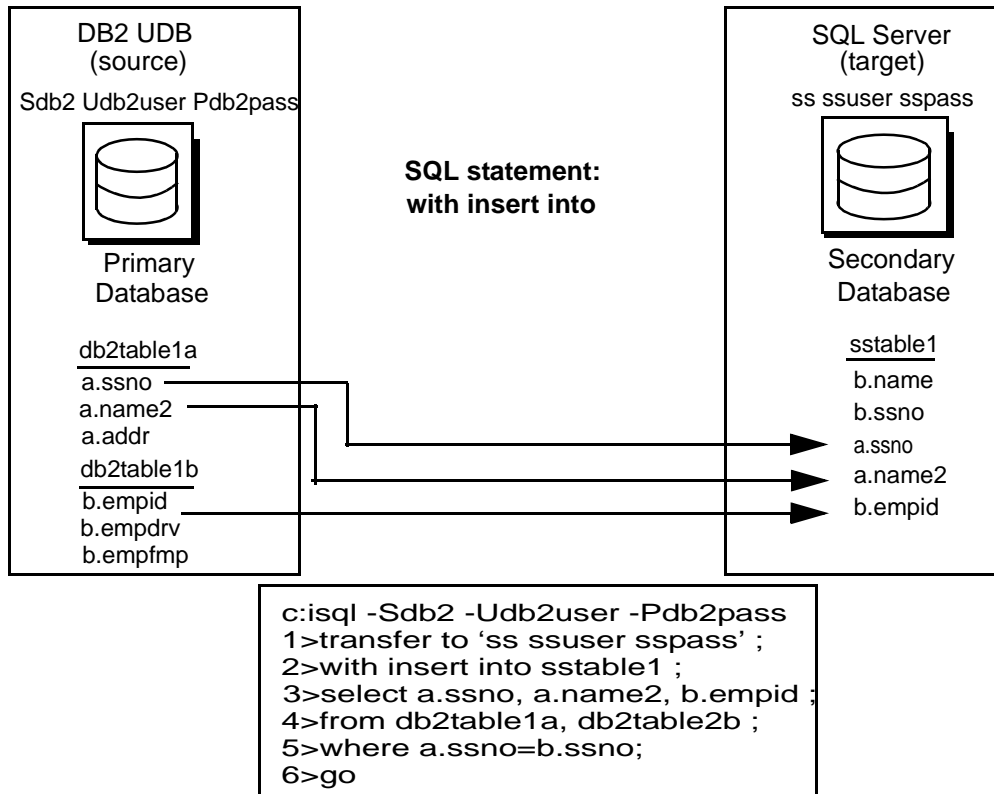
From Open Server datatypes (below)	To DB2 datatypes (across)				
	CHAR VARCHAR	INT SMALLINT	DECIMAL FLOAT REAL	DATE TIME TIMESTAMP	CHAR FOR BIT DATA VARCHAR FOR BIT DATA
CHAR	X	X	X	X	X
VARCHAR		X	X	X	X
TEXT	X	X	X	X	X
BINARY	X				X
VARBINARY	X				X
IMAGE	X				X
BIT	X	X	X		
SMALLINT	X	X	X		
INTEGER	X	X	X		
DECIMAL	X	X	X		
MONEY	X	X	X		
MONEY4	X	X	X		
REAL	X	X	X		
FLOAT	X	X	X		
DATETIME	X			X	
DATETIME4	X			X	

## Processing bulk copy “transfer to” statements

Use the transfer to statement when you want to move data *to* a secondary database from the primary database. When you execute a bulk copy transfer using transfer to, the secondary database is the target, and the primary database is the source. You can use another DB2 access service, an MDI Database Gateway, Open Server, or ASE/CIS as the secondary database.

The following figure shows the data flow of one of the preceding transfer to examples, in which a social security number (ssno), a name (name2), and an ID (empid) are selected from two DB2 tables. The information is appended to the Adaptive Server table called sstable1. The transfer is based on a join of social security numbers.

**Figure 10-2: DB2 bulk copy transfer to statement**



## Datatype conversion for “transfer to” processing

The DB2 access service performs datatype conversions for bulk copy transfer to statements. These conversions are defined within the DB2 access service and are not affected by the settings of the datatype conversion configuration properties and set statements.

Each DB2 access service specification will include specific definitions of datatype mapping for that target DBMS. The DB2 access service converts these datatypes into the actual datatypes of the target Open Server columns. If a column does not match, the DB2 access service ends the transfer with an error.

These conversions are defined within the DB2 access service and are not affected by the settings of the datatype conversions configuration properties.

The following table shows the DB2 datatypes that the DB2 access service can convert into corresponding Open Server datatypes. To save space in the table, the CS\_ prefix is removed from the Open Server datatypes, and Open Server datatypes with the same results are combined.

**Table 10-3: DB2 to Open Server datatype conversion for transfer processing**

<b>From DB2 datatype (below)</b>	<b>To Open Server datatypes (across)</b>						
	<i>CHAR</i>	<i>BINARY</i>	<i>BIT</i>	<i>INTEGER</i>	<i>MONEY</i>	<i>REAL</i>	<i>DATE TIME</i>
	<i>VARCHAR</i>	<i>VARBINARY</i>	<i>SMALLINT</i>	<i>DECIMAL</i>	<i>MONEY4</i>	<i>FLOAT</i>	<i>DATETIME4</i>
	<i>TEXT</i>	<i>IMAGE</i>					
CHAR	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
VARCHAR	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
SMALLINT	X		X	X	X	X	
INT	X		X	X	X	X	
DECIMAL	X		X	X	X	X	
FLOAT	X		X	X	X	X	
REAL	X		X	X	X	X	
DATE	X						X
TIME	X						X
TIMESTAMP	X						X
CHAR FOR BIT DATA	X	X					
VARCHAR FOR BIT DATA	X	X					

## Authorization for transfer to a Adaptive Server

When you execute a transfer to the Adaptive Server, you must have create procedure authorization on the tempdb database on the Adaptive Server; otherwise, you receive the following error message:

```
create procedure permission denied, database tempdb,  
owner dbo
```

Because tempdb is the Adaptive Server standard temporary database where CT-Library implements dynamic prepare and execute, the System Administrator must grant create procedure authorization so users can execute transfer to statements to a Adaptive Server.

To grant create procedure permission to public:

- 1 Log on to the target Adaptive Server as “sa”:  

```
c:\> isql -Usa -Psa_password -Ssql_servername
```
- 2 Specify the tempdb database:  

```
1> use tempdb  
2> go
```
- 3 Grant create procedure authorization:  

```
1> grant create procedure to public  
2> go
```
- 4 Log off the target Adaptive Server:  

```
1> quit
```

## Process flow of bulk copy transfer statements

Bulk copy transfer processing occurs in the following sequence:

- 1 The client application initiates a transfer request.
- 2 The DB2 access service receives the transfer request and executes the *sourceselectstatement* against the source database to retrieve data, including column datatypes, length, precision, and scale.
- 3 The DB2 access service queries the target table for a description of the target table columns. Then, it compares this information to the structure of the *sourceselectstatement* result set for these criteria:

- The target table must have at least as many columns as the result set.
- The datatype of each result set column must be convertible to the type of its target column.

If either of these tests fails, a structural error occurs, and the DB2 access service stops processing the transfer.

- 4 If the transfer statement includes the with replace or truncate phrase, the DB2 access service deletes data in the target table, if the user ID of the person executing the request is authorized to do so. If the user ID is not authorized, the transfer fails.
- 5 The DB2 access service maps the columns from the result set to the columns in the target table in the order in which they appear. The DB2 access service checks the nullability of all columns in the target table that do not have corresponding columns in the result set. If the columns are non-nullable, the transfer fails.
- 6 The DB2 access service prepares an insert or replace statement for execution against the target table.
- 7 The DB2 access service retrieves rows from the source select statement and executes the insert statement against the target database for each row retrieved.
- 8 If conversion errors occur as rows are inserted (for example, a value is out of range), the invalid columns are handled according to the values set in the following properties:
  - CharConvertError
  - NumConvertError
  - DatetimeConvertError
  - DefaultDate
  - DefaultTime
  - DefaultNum

Then, the transfer continues processing. If the SendWarningMessages property is set to yes, the DB2 access service sends a warning message to the client application.

- 9 One of the following occurs:

- If TransactionMode is set to short, the DB2 access service issues a commit after each insert or replace, regardless of any conversion errors.
- If TransactionMode is set to long, the DB2 access service issues a commit at the end of the transfer or after each batch of BulkCommitCount rows if BulkCommitCount is not set to zero. This commit occurs regardless of any conversion errors.

## Guidelines for processing

To avoid errors in the bulk copy transfer process, review the following guidelines that apply to values.

### Character datatypes

Character datatypes (CHAR, VARCHAR, TEXT) can be converted to any other datatype. Conversely, every datatype can be converted to character data; however, you must be sure the character string is convertible to the target datatype. For example, the character string “450” can be converted to a numeric datatype such as INTEGER or DECIMAL, but the character string “Hello” causes a value error going to a numeric datatype.

### Numeric datatypes

Numeric datatypes can be converted to other numeric datatypes or to character datatypes. However, they cannot be converted to binary or date datatypes.

Additional guidelines are:

- All numeric conversions use truncation.
- Any loss of digits to the *left* of the decimal results in an error. For example, an integer of value 123 cannot be converted to a *decimal(4,2)* value without losing a digit to the left of the decimal point.
- Any loss of digits to the *right* of the decimal point is not considered an error. For example, a float of value 123.456 is converted to an integer of value 123 without error.

- When you transfer data from a *decimal* column to a *float* column, the precision of the result is not better than the precision of the target column. For example, if you transfer data from a *decimal(15,0)* column to a *float* column, then back to a *decimal(15,0)* column, the results in the target *decimal(15,0)* column do not match the results of the source *decimal(15,0)* column, due to the *float* column precision.

## Date datatypes

Date datatypes can be converted to other date datatypes or to character strings; however, they cannot be converted to numeric or binary datatypes.

## Binary datatypes

Binary datatypes can be converted to other binary datatypes and to character strings; however, they cannot be converted to numeric or date datatypes.

---

**Note** ASCII to EBCDIC translation does not occur if the source column, the destination column, or both source and destination columns are BINARY datatypes.

---

## Datatype error conditions

The following four tables show the values that cause errors for the DB2 access service during bulk copy transfer. These tables are divided into the four major groups of input datatypes:

- Character datatypes
- Numeric datatypes
- Date datatypes
- Binary datatypes

Each table shows the output datatype and the kind of error that can occur.

## Character datatype errors

This table uses the following as the source character datatypes:

- Open Server datatypes:
  - CS\_CHAR
  - CS\_VARCHAR
  - CS\_TEXT
- DB2 datatypes:
  - CHAR
  - VARCHAR

The following table shows the errors that can occur when the DB2 access service converts the preceding character datatypes to those listed in the Open Server and DB2 Output Datatype column.

---

**Note** In the Output Datatype column of the following four tables, the CS\_ prefix is attached to the Open Server datatypes to distinguish them from DB2 datatypes.

---



**Table 10-4: Conversion errors: character datatypes to output datatypes**

Open Server and DB2 output datatype	Error condition
CS_CHAR CS_VARCHAR CS_TEXT CS_BINARY CS_VARBINARY CHAR VARCHAR	The source data is longer than the destination column.
CS_BIT	The source value cannot be converted to a number, or the resulting value does not equal 0 or 1.
CS_TINYINT	The source value cannot be converted to a number, or the resulting value is not between 0 and 255.
CS_SMALLINT SMALLINT	The source value cannot be converted to a number, or the resulting value is not between -32,768 and +32,767.
CS_INTEGER INTEGER	The source value cannot be converted to a number, or the resulting value is not between -147,483,648 and +2,147,483,647.
CS_DECIMAL DECIMAL	The source value cannot be converted to a number, or the number of digits to the left of the decimal point in the source exceeds the destination decimal's precision minus scale. Digits to the right of the decimal point that exceed the decimal's scale are lost without error.
REAL FLOAT	The source value cannot be converted to a number, or the resulting value is one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Greater than 7.2E+75</li> <li>• Less than -7.2E+75</li> <li>• Greater than 0 and less than 5.4E-79</li> <li>• Less than 0 and greater than -5.4E-79</li> </ul>
CS_REAL CS_FLOAT	The source value cannot be converted to a number, or it is out of range. Because the value range is machine-dependent, see the Adaptive Server documentation for your environment.
CS_MONEY	The source value cannot be converted to a number, or the resulting value is not between -922,337,203,685,477.5807 and +922,337,203,685,477.5807.
CS_MONEY4	The source value cannot be converted to a number, or the resulting value is not between -214,748.3647 and +214,748.3647.

Open Server and DB2 output datatype	Error condition
CS_DATE	The source value is not an ISO format (YYYY-MM-DD) date or a valid Adaptive Server date/time string, or the resulting date has a year prior to 1753.
CS_DATETIME4	The source value is not an ISO format (YYYY-MM-DD) date or a valid Adaptive Server date/time string, or the resulting date is not between January 1, 1900, and June 6, 2079.
DATETIME TIMESTAMP	The source value is not an ISO format date, time or timestamp, or a valid Adaptive Server date/time string.

## Numeric datatype errors

This section uses the following as source numeric datatypes:

- Open Server datatypes:
  - CS\_BIT
  - CS\_TINYINT
  - CS\_SMALLINT
  - CS\_INT
  - CS\_REAL
  - CS\_FLOAT
  - CS\_DECIMAL
  - CS\_MONEY
  - CS\_MONEY4
- DB2 datatypes:
  - SMALLINT
  - INTEGER
  - FLOAT
  - REAL
  - DECIMAL

The following table shows the errors that can occur when the DB2 access service converts the preceding source numeric datatypes to those listed in the Open Server and DB2 Output Datatype column.

**Table 10-5: Conversion errors: numeric datatypes to output datatypes**

Open Server and DB2 output datatype	Error condition
CS_CHAR CS_VARCHAR CHAR VARCHAR	The destination column is too small to hold the character string to express the value. For example, the source value is 102, and the destination column is CS_CHAR(2).
CS_BIT	The value does not equal 0 or 1.
CS_TINYINT	The value is not between 0 and 255.
CS_SMALLINT SMALLINT	The value is not between -32,768 and +32,767.
CS_INTEGER INTEGER	The value is not between -147,483,648 and +2,147,483,647.
CS_DECIMAL DECIMAL	The number of digits to the left of the decimal point in the source exceeds the destination decimal's precision minus scale. Digits to the right of the decimal point that exceed the decimal's scale are lost without error.
REAL FLOAT	The source value is one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Greater than 7.2E+75</li> <li>• Less than -7.2E+75</li> <li>• Greater than 0 and less than 5.4E-79</li> <li>• Less than 0 and greater than -5.4E-79</li> </ul>
CS_REAL CS_FLOAT	The source value is out of range. Because the value range is machine-dependent, see the Adaptive Server documentation for your environment.
CS_MONEY	The value is not between -922,337,203,685,477.5807 and +922,337,203,685,477.5807.  Because the accuracy of a FLOAT value is 15 digits, a FLOAT value converted to CS_MONEY is accurate only to the nearest dollar.  Because the highest precision of a REAL value is 7 digits, a REAL value converted to CS_MONEY is accurate only to the nearest hundred million dollars.
CS_MONEY4	The value is not between -214,748.3647 and +214,748.3647.

## Date datatype errors

This section uses the following as source date datatypes:

- Open Server datatypes:
  - CS\_DATETIME
  - CS\_DATETIME4
- DB2 datatypes:
  - DATE
  - TIME
  - TIMESTAMP

The following table shows the errors that can occur when the DB2 access service converts the preceding source date datatypes to those listed in the Open Server and DB2 Output Datatype column.

**Table 10-6: Conversion errors: date datatypes to output datatypes**

Open Server and DB2 output datatype	Error condition
CS_CHAR CS_VARCHAR CS_TEXT CHAR VARCHAR	When converted into a character string, the date or time value is too long to fit into the destination column.
CS_DATE	The date has a year prior to 1753.
CS_DATETIME4	The date is not between January 1, 1900, and June 6, 2079.

## Binary datatype errors

This section uses the following as source binary datatypes:

- Open Server datatypes:
  - CS\_BINARY
  - CS\_VARBINARY
  - CS\_IMAGE
- DB2 datatypes:
  - CHAR FOR BIT DATA

- VARCHAR FOR BIT DATA

The following table shows the errors that can occur when the DB2 access service converts the preceding source binary datatypes to those listed in the Open Server and DB2 Output Datatype column.

**Table 10-7: Conversion errors: binary to output datatypes**

Open Server and DB2 output datatype	Error condition
CS_CHAR	The source data is longer than the destination column.
CS_VARCHAR	
CS_TEXT	
CS_BINARY	
CS_VARBINARY	
CS_IMAGE	
CHAR	
VARCHAR	



# Using Destination-Template Transfer

This chapter describes the destination-template transfer statement.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
General description of destination-template transfer	191
Syntax for destination-template transfer statements	192
Destination-template datatype qualifiers	194
Special date and time qualifiers	197
Processing destination-template “transfer from” statements	200
Processing destination-template “transfer to” statements	202

## General description of destination-template transfer

The destination-template transfer statement allows you to perform operations that do more than transfer data. You can use destination-template transfer statements to:

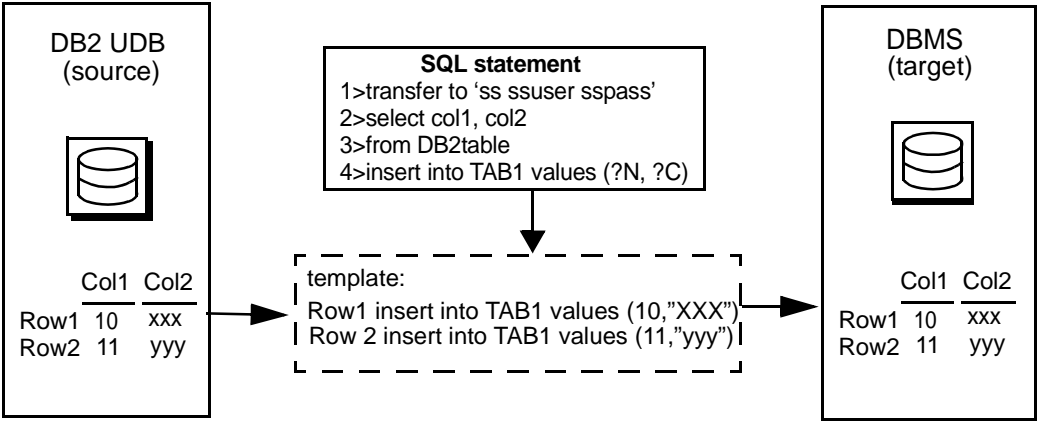
- Create a full-image copy (insert)
- Replace existing rows (replace or truncate)
- Create an incremental copy (insert)
- Modify column values (update or delete)
- Perform structural modifications (create or alter)
- Change database permissions (grant or revoke)
- Execute remote stored procedures (execute or use)
- Execute any other arbitrary SQL statement

When you use the destination-template transfer statement, you can feed a result set into a template, and then force the template to perform certain operations.

During a destination-template transfer, the DB2 access service inserts the data values it retrieves with the `sourceselectstatement` from the source database into the destination-template SQL clause. This clause contains one question mark (?) for each column in the result set of the `sourceselectstatement`. Each value from the result set is substituted for the corresponding question mark in the template on a row-by-row basis. The DB2 access service then executes the resulting statement against the target database.

The following figure shows replacement with numeric and character values. This figure assumes that Col1 is numeric and Col2 is character.

**Figure 11-1: Replacement of values during destination-template transfer**



# Syntax for destination-template transfer statements

The syntax for a destination-template transfer statement is as follows:

```
transfer [with report]
    {to | from} 'secondaryname userid password';
    sourceselectstatement;
    destinationtemplatestatement
where:
```



- `transfer` is the command to initiate a data transfer.
- `with report` is an optional phrase specified in the first line of the transfer statement that instructs the DB2 access service to return processing information to the client application.

This information is returned as a result set that consists of one `VARCHAR` column and one row. The row contains the number of rows transferred, rejected, or modified during processing.

- `{to | from}` indicates the direction of the transfer:
  - `to` specifies that the data transfer originates from the primary database and sends the data to the secondary database, which can be another DB2 access service.
  - `from` specifies that the data transfer originates from the secondary database and moves data to the primary database.
- `secondaryname userid password` is a character string, enclosed in single or double quotes in the order shown, that provides the information needed to connect to the secondary database:
  - `secondaryname` is the name used to identify the secondary database.
  - `userid` and `password` must be valid on the secondary database. You can substitute an asterisk for `password`, if a password is not specified.
- `sourceselectstatement` specifies a SQL statement that is executed against the source database to produce the result set that will be used in the transfer. This statement can be of any complexity acceptable to the source database, including stored procedures. SQL transformation is not performed on the `sourceselectstatement`. It must be in the source database's SQL syntax.
- `destinationtemplatestatement` is a SQL statement or any statement that is valid for the target database environment where it executes. SQL transformation is not performed on the `destinationtemplatestatement`. It must be in the destination database's SQL syntax. This statement can include question marks as placeholders for the data values that will be inserted. It can also include qualifiers to specify datatypes for the question mark placeholders in the `destinationtemplatestatement`. For information on these qualifiers, see "Destination-template datatype qualifiers" on page 194.

To increase processing efficiency, you can batch destination-templates together for processing. Use the `TransferBatch` property or `set` statement to specify how many templates to batch.

## Destination-template datatype qualifiers

Qualifiers tell the DB2 access service how to format data that is inserted for a placeholder. If you do not supply a qualifier, the DB2 access service applies default transformations.

Qualification is required for date and time values. You can use the ?T, ?t, ?D, and ?d qualifiers for dates, or you can create a custom qualifier using the special qualifiers described in Table 11-5 on page 198.

---

**Note** In destination-template transfers, you cannot use the question mark as a literal. The DB2 access service recognizes the question mark only as a qualifier.

---

The following table defines valid datatype qualifiers.

**Table 11-1: Destination-template transfer datatype qualifiers**

Placeholder/ Qualifier	Definition
?C	An Adaptive Server char or DB2 CHAR data string enclosed in quotes
?N	Numeric data, not quoted
?D	A standard format Adaptive Server datetime data enclosed in quotes: 'MON DD YYYY hh:mm:ss.nnn'
?d	Standard format for DB2UDB date in quotes: 'mm/dd/yyyy'
?T	Standard format DB2 TIMESTAMP data enclosed in quotes: 'YYYY-MM-DD-hh.mm.ss.nnnnnn'
?t	Standard format for DB2 time in quotes: 'hh:mm:ss'
?X	Standard format Adaptive Server hexadecimal data (for example, 0xffee), used for transferring binary data to SQL Server
?x	Standard format DB2 hexadecimal data (for example, X'FFEE'), used for transferring binary data to DB2
?y	Standard format for Teradata date in quotes: 'yy/mm/dd'
?O	Standard format for Oracle hexadecimal data, used for transferring binary data to Oracle

Table 11-2, Table 11-3, and Table 11-4 show the effects of qualifiers on Open Server datatypes.

**Table 11-2: Effects of qualifiers on datatypes (?C, ?N, ?D, ?T),**

Open Server datatype	Default	Qualifiers			
		?C	?N	?D	?T
CS_CHAR CS_VARCHAR CS_TEXT	?C	Quote	No quote	If the source is an ISO TIMESTAMP, it is converted to 'Mon dd yyyy hh:mm:ss:nnn'. If the source is an ISO DATE, it is converted to 'Mon dd yy'. If the source is an ISO TIME, it is converted to 'Mon dd yy hh:mm:ss' (using the value from the Default Date property as the date portion of the value).  Otherwise, it is enclosed in quotes and copied as is. If the target DBMS is a SQL Server, strings that do not convert to DATE, TIMESTAMP, or TIME are not transferred.  Convert to Open Server datetime string, quote.	If the source is an ISO DATE or TIME, the <i>DefaultDate</i> and <i>DefaultTime</i> property values are used to fill in missing information.  Convert to ISO TIMESTAMP, quote
CS_BIT, CS_INT1 CS_INT2 CS_INT4 CS_REAL CS_FLOAT	?N	Convert to char, quote	Convert to char, no quote	n/a	n/a
CS_MONEY CS_MONEY4 CS_DECIMAL	?N	Convert to char, quote	Convert to char, no quote	n/a	n/a
CS_DATETIME CS_DATETIME4	?D	'MON DD YYYY hh:mm' [AM or PM]	n/a	'MMM DD YYYY hh:mm:ss:nnn'	'YYYY-MM-DD- hh.mm.ss.nnnnnn'
CS_BINARY CS_VARBINARY CS_IMAGE	?X or ?x	Convert to hex, quote	n/a	n/a	n/a

The following table shows the effects of qualifiers on Open Server datatypes.

**Table 11-3: Effects of qualifiers on datatypes (?y, ?d, ?t, ?x),**

Open Server Datatype	Default	Qualifiers (in bold)			
		?y	?d	?t	?x
CS_CHAR CS_VARCHAR CS_TEXT	?C	If the source is an ISO DATE, TIME, or TIMESTAMP, it is converted to 'yy/mm/dd'. Otherwise, it is enclosed in quotes and copied as is. Strings that do not convert to DATE, TIMESTAMP, or TIME are not transferred.	If the source is an ISO DATE, TIME, or TIMESTAMP, it is converted to 'mm/dd/yy'. Otherwise, it is enclosed in quotes and copied as is. Strings that do not convert to DATE, TIMESTAMP, or TIME are not transferred.	If the source is an ISO DATE, TIME, or TIMESTAMP, it is converted to 'hh:mm:ss'. Otherwise, it is enclosed in quotes and copied as is. Strings that do not convert to DATE, TIMESTAMP, or TIME are not transferred.	Convert to hex; leading 'X, trailing 'f
CS_BIT, CS_INT1 CS_INT2 CS_INT4 CS_REAL CS_FLOAT CS_MONEY CS_MONEY4 CS_DECIMAL	?N	n/a	n/a	n/a	n/a
CS_DATETIME CS_DATETIME4	?D	'yy/mm/dd'	'yy/mm/dd'	'hh:mm:ss'	n/a
CS_BINARY CS_VARBINARY CS_IMAGE	?X or ?x	n/a	n/a	n/a	Convert to hex; leading 'X, trailing 'f

The following table shows the effects of qualifiers on Open Server datatypes.

**Table 11-4: Effects of qualifiers on datatypes (?X, ?O,)**

Open Server datatype	Default	Qualifiers	
		?X	?O
CS_CHAR		Convert to hex; leading 0x, no quote	n/a
CS_VARCHAR			
CS_TEXT			
CS_BIT, CS_INT1	?N	n/a	n/a
CS_INT2			
CS_INT4			
CS_REAL			
CS_FLOAT			
CS_MONEY			
CS_MONEY4			
CS_DECIMAL			
CS_DATETIME	?D	n/a	n/a
CS_DATETIME4			
CS_BINARY	?X or ?x	If the target database is DB2, ?x converts the data to the standard DB2 hex format (a quoted hex number with a leading X).	n/a
CS_VARBINARY			
CS_IMAGE		Convert to hex; leading 0x, no quote.	

## Special date and time qualifiers

You can combine special date and time qualifiers to construct the date or time format that the target database requires.

Follow these rules for special qualifiers:

- Enter special characters in either uppercase or lowercase.
- Separate special characters by any arbitrary character, such as a hyphen, slash, or space. Any unrecognized character is copied to the target as is.
- Enclose special characters in single or double quotes, because the resulting value is passed to the target as a character string.
- Qualifiers can contain a null terminated string. The string is limited only by the buffer size (1KB).

The following table shows qualifier definitions.

**Table 11-5: Special date and time qualifiers for transfer**

Qualifier	Definition
yy	Last two digits of year.
yyyy	All four digits of year.
mm	Month or minute (recognized by context).
mon	Three-character month abbreviation: Jan, Feb, Mar, Apr, May, Jun, Jul, Aug, Sep, Oct, Nov, Dec.
dd	Day.
hh	Hour.
ss	Seconds.
mmm	Milliseconds.
mmmmmm or uuuuuu	Microseconds.
am or pm	Indicates that you want an am or pm designator included. The actual designator is inserted appropriate to the value.

## Examples

This section contains examples of destination-template transfer statements executed through ISQL. The following table shows the database and user information used in the examples.

### Example #1

**Table 11-6: Information used for destination-template transfer examples**

Transfer components	Primary database	Secondary database
Database	DB2	ASE
User ID	db2user	ssuser
Password	db2pass	sspass
Service Name	db2	ss
Table Names	db2table1, db2table2, db2table3	sstable1, sstable2, sstable3
Column Names	db2col1, db2col2, db2col3,....	sscol1, sscol2, sscol3,...

#### *Task*

Transfer data from certain columns in the DB2 table named db2table1 to append to the Adaptive Server table named sstable3. Note the specified datatype qualifiers in the sourceselectstatement.

```
c:>isql -Sdb2 -Udb2user -Pdb2pass
1>transfer to 'ss ssuser sspass';
2>select db2col1, db2col3, db2col2, db2col6
3>from db2table1;
4>insert into sstable3 (sscol1,sscol3,sscol2,sscol6)
values (?C, ?D, ?C, ?N);
5>go
```

*Result:*

Data is selected from four columns (db2col1, db2col3, db2col2, db2col6) in the DB2 table called db2table1 and inserted into the Adaptive Server table called sstable3. Qualifiers (the characters that follow each question mark) are used to ensure that the source values are correctly converted into the target table datatypes. In this example, the template contains four question marks. Therefore, the result set obtained by the source select statement cannot contain more than four columns or the transfer fails.

## Example #2

*Task:*

Select marked rows from an Adaptive Server table and delete the corresponding rows in a DB2 table.

```
c:>isql -Sdb2 -Udb2user -Pdb2pass
1>transfer from 'ss ssuser sspass';
2>select sscol1 from sstable1
3>where action="drop";
4>delete from db2table3
5>where db2col1=?C ;
6>go
```

*Result:*

Certain rows (those with *action* set to drop) are selected from DB2 table db2table3, by matching the values with the corresponding DB2 column db2col1. At this point, you can use a DB2 table with the data from the Adaptive Server table.

## Example #3

*Task:*

Update the DB2 table with data from a similar Adaptive Server table.

```
c:>isql -Sdb2 -Udb2user -Pdb2pass
```

```
1>transfer from 'ss ssuser sspass';
2>select sscol1, sscol2, sscol3, sscol4
3>from sstable1
4>where sscol5 > '12/31/1994 24.0000';
5>update db2table3
6>set db2col1=?, db2col2=?, db2col3=?
7>where db2col4 = ? ;
8>go
```

*Result:*

Four Adaptive Server columns are selected when sscol5, a datetime value, is greater than a specified date and time ('12/31/24.0000'). The fourth column is the key that specifies the rows to be updated in the DB2 table called dbtable3.

## Example #4

*Task:*

Process orders in DB2 using an RSP. The orders were entered in ASE. Note that the datatype qualifiers are not specified.

```
c:>isql -Sdb2 -Udb2user -Pdb2pass
1>transfer from 'ss ssuser sspass';
2>select sscol1, sscol2, sscol3
3>from sstable1;
4>use procedure ordproc ?, ?, ? ;
5>go
```

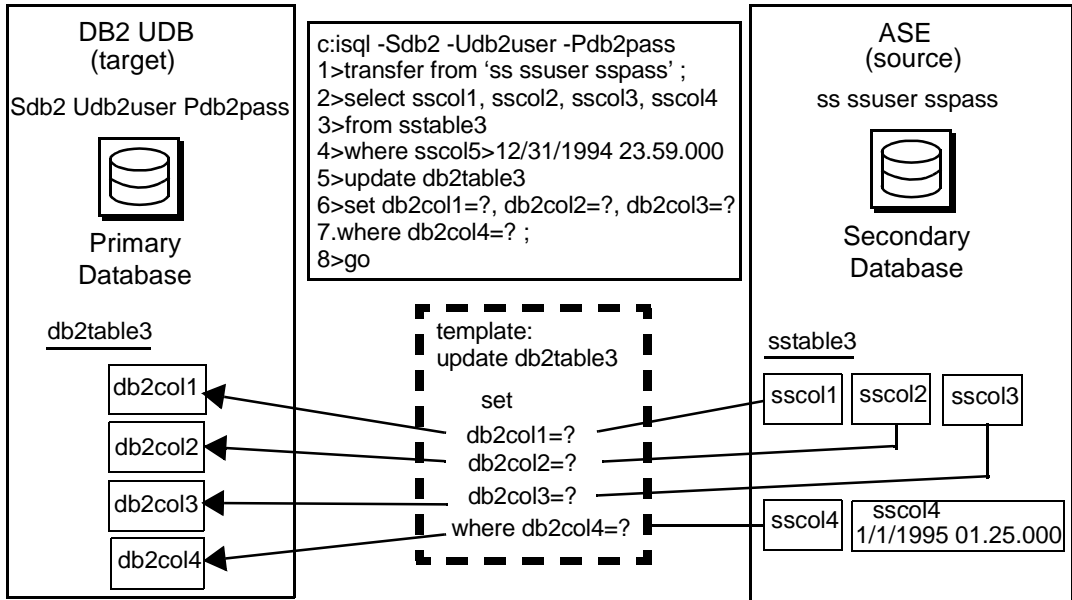
*Result:*

The order information is selected from columns in the Adaptive Server table called sstable1, and the RSP named ordproc is executed against DB2 to process the information.

## Processing destination-template “transfer from” statements

The following figure shows how the transfer from statement updates four columns in the DB2 table called db2table3 with data selected from four similar Adaptive Server columns. Whether the update occurs depends on a comparison with sscol5, a datetime value that must be greater than '12/31/1994 23.59.000'. The fourth column is the key that specifies the rows targeted for the update.



**Figure 11-2: Data flow in a destination-template transfer from statement**

The following steps describe the data flow process:

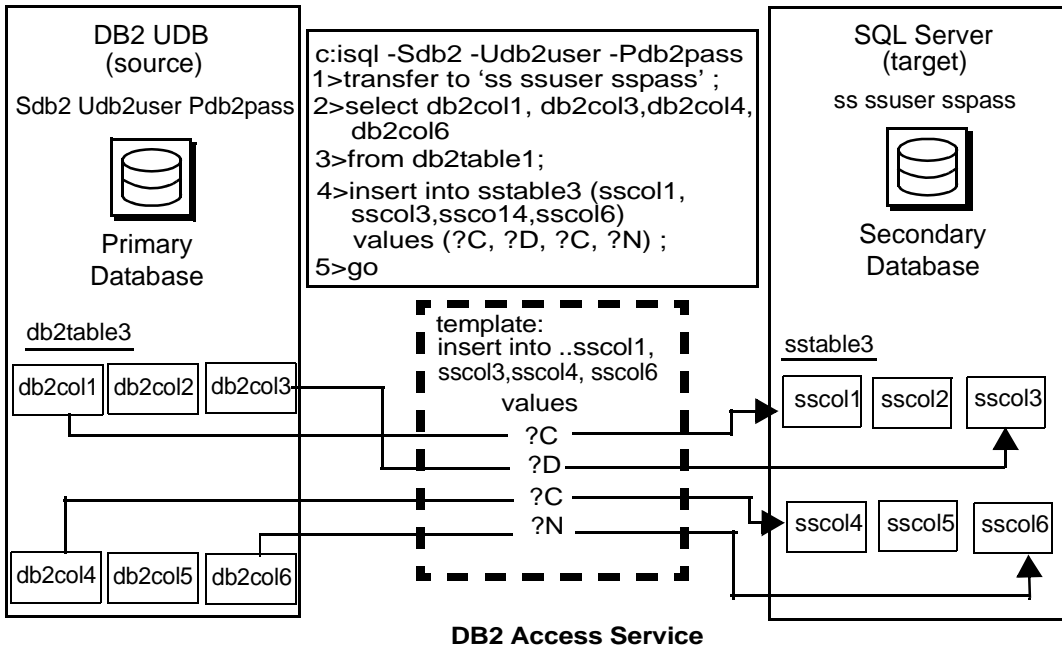
- 1 The DB2 access service executes the *sourceselectstatement* against the secondary database and retrieves the column descriptions.
- 2 The DB2 access service inserts the first row of data resulting from the *sourceselectstatement* into one destination-template, where it substitutes data for the question marks and performs any needed conversion. Then, the DB2 access service inserts the next row into a second template and performs the same operations as before. After it inserts all the rows, the DB2 access service batches the templates together.
- 3 The DB2 access service executes the request templates against the primary database, in this case, DB2.
- 4 The DB2 access service substitutes the next *n* rows and executes another request. It repeats this process until all the rows finish processing. The value of *n* is established by the current setting of the TransferBatch property.
- 5 One of the following occurs:

- If TransactionMode is set to short, the DB2 access service issues a commit after each batch finishes processing, regardless of any conversion errors.
- If TransactionMode is set to long, the DB2 access service issues a commit after the entire transfer processes, regardless of any conversion errors.

## Processing destination-template “transfer to” statements

The following figure shows the transfer to statement appending data from certain columns in the DB2 table named db2table1 to Adaptive Server table sstable3. The four qualifiers behind the question marks require that the result set from the sourceselectstatement contains four columns; otherwise, the transfer fails.

**Figure 11-3: Data flow in a destination-template transfer to statement**



The following steps describe the data flow process:

- 1 The DB2 access service issues the `sourceselectstatement` against the primary database and retrieves the column descriptions.
- 2 The DB2 access service receives the results of the `sourceselectstatement` and converts them to the pre-defined Adaptive Server datatypes. These datatypes do not necessarily match the datatypes of the columns in the target table.
- 3 The DB2 access service inserts the first row of data resulting from the `sourceselectstatement` into one destination-template, where it substitutes data for the question marks and performs any needed conversion. Then, the DB2 access service inserts the next row into a second template and performs the same operations as before. After it inserts all the rows, the DB2 access service batches the templates together.
- 4 The DB2 access service issues the request against the secondary database.
- 5 The DB2 access service substitutes the next  $n$  rows into the `destinationtemplatestatement` and issues another request against the secondary database. It continues until all rows are processed.
- 6 One of the following occurs:
  - If `TransactionMode` is set to short, the DB2 access service issues a commit after *each batch* finishes processing, regardless of any conversion errors.
  - If `TransactionMode` is set to long, the DB2 access service issues a commit after the *entire transfer* finishes processing, regardless of any conversion errors.



# Accessing Catalog Information with CSPs

To obtain information about database objects, you need to access the database catalog. Catalog stored procedures (CSPs) provide this catalog access. This chapter describes how to use CSPs to access the DB2 catalog.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
General information	205
Coding instructions	208
sp_capabilities	211
sp_column_privileges	213
sp_columns	215
sp_databases	218
sp_datatype_info	219
sp_fkeys	222
sp_pkeys	224
sp_server_info	225
sp_special_columns	226
sp_sproc_columns	228
sp_statistics	230
sp_stored_procedures	233
sp_table_privileges	234
sp_tables	236

## General information

This section provides an overview of CSPs.

## Why use CSPs

The catalog structures for DB2 and Adaptive Server are different. If you have client applications written to access the Adaptive Server catalog, you may need to re-code the client application queries to send those queries directly to the DB2 system tables. To avoid modifying your database-specific applications, you can use CSPs to access catalog information. CSPs are compatible with the catalog interface for the Open Database Connectivity (ODBC) Application Program Interface (API).

## CSP properties

Configuration properties specify the objects about which an access service returns information from CSPs. For information about configuring these properties, see Chapter 2, “Creating and Configuring DB2 Access Services.”

## CSP set statements

You can use set statements to change operating values for a client connection. For information about CSP set statements, see “Catalog Stored Procedure properties” on page 73.

## How the DB2 access service assembles stored procedure information

When you invoke a CSP, the DB2 access service creates a SQL statement that returns a result set that matches, as closely as possible, the Microsoft ODBC 2.0 specification results. For detailed information about the Microsoft ODBC 2.0 specification, see the *Microsoft ODBC 2.0 Programmer's Reference and SDK Guide*.

Because the DB2 system catalog is significantly different from the ODBC specification, an exact match is impossible. To make the results match, the DB2 access service performs additional computations as it returns the rows. In some cases, the SQL statement is quite complex and must assemble the requested information from multiple sources.

In a few cases, such as `sp_stored_procedures`, `sp_sproc_columns`, and `sp_server_info`, information is stored in tables that were created during installation of DirectConnect.

Some information is static, depending upon the version of DB2 you are using. In these cases, the DB2 access service uses memory tables to improve the speed of operation. The following CSPs and system procedures use memory tables:

- `sp_capabilities`
- `sp_datatype_info`
- `sp_helpserver`
- `sp_sqlgetinfo`

## Supported CSPs

The following table shows CSPs that a DB2 access service supports.

**Table 12-1: Supported CSPs**

CSP	Information retrieved by the CSP
<code>sp_capabilities</code>	Returns the SQL capabilities of a DB2 access service
<code>sp_column_privileges</code>	Column privilege information for one table
<code>sp_columns</code>	Column descriptions for a table
<code>sp_databases</code>	List of available databases
<code>sp_datatype_info</code>	Datatype descriptions
<code>sp_fkeys</code>	Foreign and primary key relationships
<code>sp_pkeys</code>	Primary key information for a single table
<code>sp_server_info</code>	Server terms, limits, and capabilities
<code>sp_special_columns</code>	Additional column information
<code>sp_sproc_columns</code>	Attributes of procedures input and return parameters
<code>sp_statistics</code>	Statistics and indexes for one table
<code>sp_stored_procedures</code>	List of available procedures
<code>sp_table_privileges</code>	Table privilege information for one table
<code>sp_tables</code>	List of aliases, synonyms, tables, views, and system tables

## Coding instructions

This section includes general coding information that applies to all CSPs and system procedures.

### Parameters

CSPs and system procedures have both optional and required parameters. Required parameters must have values supplied; optional parameters default to predefined values.

The following rules apply to CSP and system procedure parameters:

- Both positional and named parameters are supported, but not in the same statement.
- Parameter values can be enclosed in double quotes. Parameter values enclosed in quotes must be in the correct case for the target.
- Object names (table names, column names, and index names) can be created using lowercase letters. The target database automatically converts object names to uppercase unless the object names are enclosed in double quotes.

### Syntax

A client application can initiate a CSP or system procedure by issuing any of the following statements:

```
sp_name parm1, parm2, . . .  
exec sp_name parm1, parm2, . . .  
execute sp_name parm1, parm2, . . .
```

where:

- *sp\_name* is the name of the stored procedure (for example, *sp\_columns*).
- *parm1* and *parm2* are parameter values required or desired for that stored procedure.

### Coding examples

You can execute CSPs with a language command or through an RPC event.



You can specify the parameters for a CSP or system procedure in one of the following forms:

- Supply all of the parameters:

```
sp_columns publishers, "dbo", "pubs2", "pub_id"
```

- Use "null" or a comma as a placeholder:

```
sp_columns publishers, null, null, "pub_id"  
sp_columns publishers, , , "pub_id"
```

- Supply one or more parameters in the following form:

```
@parameter_name = value
```

For example, to find information about a particular column, issue the following statement:

```
sp_columns @table_name = publishers, @column_name =  
"pub_id"
```

The parameter names in the syntax statement must match the parameter names defined by the CSP.

You cannot use this named parameter form if you process a CSP as an RPC event.

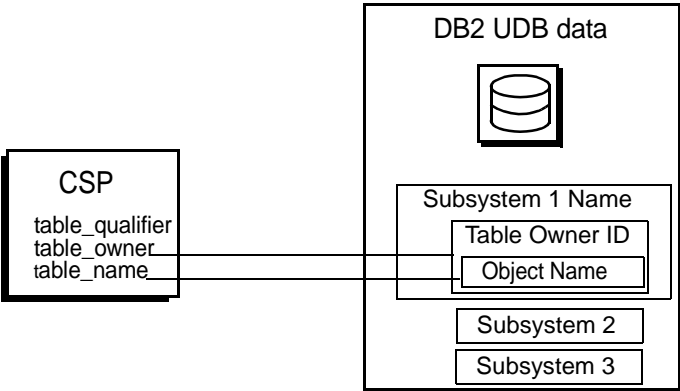
## Table name, owner, and qualifier parameters

This section explains how the parameters *table\_name*, *table\_owner*, and *table\_qualifier* are used in this product.

- *table\_name* is the name of the database object about which you want to retrieve catalog information.
- *table\_owner* is the owner of the database object about which you want to retrieve catalog information. If you do not specify a value, the DB2 access service returns information that matches the supplied criteria for all authorization IDs.
- *table\_qualifier* is ignored. Leave blank or set to NULL.

The following figure shows how CSP parameters relate to the DB2 subsystem.

Figure 12-1: CSP parameters and DB2



Wildcard-character search patterns

The percent (%) wildcard can be used in parameters that allow wildcard-character search patterns. This wildcard represents any string of zero or more characters.

If the percent (%) character is used in parameters that do not allow wildcard-character search patterns, the DB2 access service rejects the character and issues an error message.

The following table shows some examples of the percent (%) wildcard character and its use:

**Table 12-2: Wildcard examples**

Sample string	Matches
%A%	All names that contain the letter “A”; for example, A, AT, CAT
%	All names

Escape character

To use a wildcard character as a literal, precede it with an @ (at) sign. If the parameter normally accepts the wildcard character, you can mix the percent (%) wildcard character with escaped wildcard characters (@%) interpreted as literals. If the parameter does not accept the wildcard character, an @ (at) sign (@) must precede the wildcard character to use the character as a literal.

## sp\_capabilities

**Description** Returns the SQL capabilities of a DB2 access service.

**Syntax** sp\_capabilities

**Parameters** None.

This procedure does not allow parameters.

**Usage** The result set contains information that allows applications to successfully interact with an DB2 access service during normal query processing.

### Results

The following table shows the result set:

**Table 12-3: Result set for sp\_capabilities**

Column	Datatype	Description
ID	int	Capability ID
CAPABILITY_NAME	char(30)	Capability name
VALUE	int	Capability value
DESCRIPTION	char(128)	Capability description

The following table shows the ID and values for several DB2 access service functional capabilities:

**Table 12-4: sp\_capabilities information**

ID	Capability	Value description
101	SQL syntax	1=Sybase T-SQL supported 2=DB2 SQL supported
102	Join handling	0=Unsupported 1=No outer join supported 2=T-SQL support 3=Oracle supported
103	Aggregate handling	0=Unsupported 1=ANSI supported 2=All functions
104	AND predicates	0=Unsupported 1=Supported
105	OR predicates	0=Unsupported 1=Supported
106	LIKE predicates	0=Unsupported 1=ANSI-style supported 2=T-SQL supported
107	Bulk insert handling	0=Unsupported 1=Supported

ID	Capability	Value description
108	Text and image handling	0=Unsupported 1=Text, no textptr 2=Text and textptr
109	Transaction handling	0=Unsupported 1=Local supported 2=Two-phase commit supported
110	Text pattern handling	0=Unsupported 1=Pattern (text) supported
111	order by	0=Unsupported 1=Supported
112	group by	0=Unsupported 1=ANSI supported 2=T-SQL supported
113	Net password encryption	0=Unsupported 1=Supported
114	Object case sensitivity	0=Case insensitive 1=Case sensitive
115	distinct	0=Unsupported 1=Supported
116	Wild card escape	0=Unsupported Non-zero=Escape_char(s)
117	Union handling	0=Unsupported 1=Supported
118	String functions	0=Unsupported 1=Substring supported 2=Oracle subset supported 3=T-SQL supported
119	Expression handling	0=Unsupported 1=ANSI supported 2=T-SQL supported
120	Character truncation	0=Fixed length character parameters may contain trailing blanks 1=Fixed length character parameters will not contain trailing blanks
121	Language events	0=Unsupported 1=T-SQL DML without datetime in the where clause supported 2=T-SQL DML supported
122	Date functions	0=Unsupported 1=T-SQL date functions supported

ID	Capability	Value description
123	Math functions	0=Unsupported 1=Oracle functions supported 2=T-SQL math functions supported
124	T-SQL convert functions	0=Unsupported 1=Supported
125	T-SQL delete/update	0=Sybase extensions not supported 1=Sybase extensions supported
126	Insert/select handling	0=Unsupported 1=Supported
127	Subquery handling	0=Unsupported 1=Supported
128	IN/NOT IN support	0=Unsupported 1=Supported
129	CASE support	0=Unsupported 1=Supported

## sp\_column\_privileges

Description	Returns column privilege information for a single database object.
Syntax	<code>sp_column_privileges table_name [, table_owner]</code> <code>[, table_qualifier] [, column_name]</code>
Parameters	<p><i>table_name</i> is the name of the table. Wildcard-character search patterns are not supported. Aliases are not supported. Views are supported but do not include alter or index privileges.</p> <p><i>table_owner</i> is the name of the table owner. Wildcard-character search patterns are not supported.</p> <p><i>table_qualifier</i> is ignored. Leave blank or set to NULL.</p> <p><i>column_name</i> is the name of the column for which you want privilege information. Use wildcard-character search patterns to request information about more than one column. Leave blank or set to NULL to request information about all columns in the table or tables.</p>
Usage	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This function corresponds to the ODBC function <code>SQLColumnPrivileges</code>.</li> </ul>

- Information is based on the SYSCOLAUTH, SYSCOLUMNS, and SYSTABAUTH system catalog tables.

#### Results

sp\_column\_privileges returns one row for each privilege a user has on a column in a table. Results are ordered by the following columns:

- TABLE\_OWNER
- TABLE\_NAME
- COLUMN\_NAME
- PRIVILEGE

The lengths for varchar columns shown in the result set tables are maximums; the actual lengths depend on the target database.

The following table shows the result set.

**Table 12-5: Result set for sp\_column\_privileges**

Column name	Datatype	Description
TABLE_QUALIFIER	varchar (128)	Always NULL
TABLE_OWNER	varchar (128)	Authorization ID
TABLE_NAME	varchar (128) NOT NULL	Name of the object about which privilege information is returned
COLUMN_NAME	varchar (128) NOT NULL	Column name
GRANTOR	varchar (128)	Identifies the user who granted this privilege
GRANTEE	varchar (128) NOT NULL	Identifies the user to whom this privilege was granted
PRIVILEGE	varchar (128) NOT NULL	Identifies the privilege granted to the grantee on this column as one of the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• SELECT if the grantee is authorized to select rows in the associated object</li><li>• UPDATE if the grantee is authorized to insert and update rows in the associated object</li></ul>
IS_GRANTABLE	varchar (3)	Indicates whether the grantee is authorized to grant privilege on this column to other users; always NULL

## sp\_columns

Description	Returns information about the type of data that can be stored in one or more columns.
Syntax	<code>sp_columns table_name [, table_owner]</code> <code>[, table_qualifier] [, column_name]</code>
Parameters	<p><i>table_name</i> is the table name. Use the wildcard character to request information about more than one table. Aliases are not supported.</p> <p><i>table_owner</i> is the owner of the database object about which column information is requested. Use the wildcard character to request information about tables owned by more than one user. If you do not specify a table owner, <code>sp_columns</code> looks first for tables owned by the current user and then for tables owned by the database owner.</p> <p><i>table_qualifier</i> is ignored. Leave blank or set to NULL.</p> <p><i>column_name</i> is the name of the column for which you want information. Use the wildcard character to request information about more than one column. Leave empty or set to NULL to request information about all columns in the table or tables.</p>
Usage	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• If <i>column_name</i> is provided, <code>sp_columns</code> returns information only for the column or columns that match.</li><li>• This function corresponds to the ODBC function <code>SQLColumns</code>.</li><li>• Information is based on the <code>SYSCOLUMNS</code> and <code>SYSSYNONYMS</code> system catalog tables.</li></ul> <p>Results</p> <p><code>sp_columns</code> returns one row containing a description of each column in a table. Results are ordered by the following columns:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>TABLE_OWNER</code></li><li>• <code>TABLE_NAME</code></li></ul> <p>The lengths for varchar columns shown in the result set tables are maximums; the actual lengths depend on the target database.</p> <p>The following table shows the result set.</p>

**Table 12-6: Result set for sp\_columns**

Column	Datatype	Description
TABLE_QUALIFIER	varchar(128)	Always NULL
TABLE_OWNER	varchar(128)	Table owner identifier
TABLE_NAME	varchar(128) NOT NULL	Table name
COLUMN_NAME	varchar(128) NOT NULL	Column name
DATA_TYPE	smallint NOT NULL	Integer code for the ODBC datatype
TYPE_NAME	varchar(128) NOT NULL	String representing the datatype name in the target database
PRECISION	int	Number of significant digits of the column on the target database
LENGTH	int	Length of the column in bytes
SCALE	smallint	Number of digits to the right of the decimal point
RADIX	smallint	Base for numeric types
NULLABLE	smallint NOT NULL	Indicates whether the column accepts NULL values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• 0 SQL_NO_NULLS if the column does not accept NULL values</li><li>• 1 SQL_NULLABLE if the column accepts NULL values</li><li>• 2 SQL_NULLABLE_UNKNOWN if it is not known if the column accepts NULL values</li></ul>
REMARKS	varchar(254)	A description of the column
SS_DATA_TYPE	smallint	The Adaptive Server datatype name
COLID	smallint	The column ID number
REMOTE_DATA_TYPE	int	An integer representing the underlying target database datatype (composite value)

#### ODBC Datatypes

The following table describes the DB2 datatypes and matching ODBC integer identifiers that are returned in the TYPE\_NAME and DATA\_TYPE columns of the sp\_columns, sp\_datatype\_info, sp\_special\_columns, and sp\_sproc\_columns result sets.



**Table 12-7: ODBC datatypes**

<b>DB2 datatype (TYPE_NAME)</b>	<b>Target datatype maximum physical length</b>	<b>ODBC type</b>	<b>ODBC integer ID (DATA_ TYPE)</b>	<b>DB2 datatype description</b>
CHARACTER() FOR BIT DATA	254	SQL_BINARY	-2	Fixed length character for bit data
VARCHAR() FOR BIT DATA	254	SQL_VARBINARY	-3	Variable length character for bit data
LONG VARCHAR FOR BIT DATA	32714	SQL_LONGVARBINARY	-4	Variable length character for bit data
CHARACTER()	254	SQL_CHAR	1	Fixed length character
VARCHAR()	254	SQL_VARCHAR	12	Variable length character
LONG VARCHAR()	32714	SQL_LONGVARCHAR	-1	Variable length character
CHARACTER() FOR MIXED DATA	254	SQL_BINARY	-2	Fixed length character (DBCS or SBCS)
VARCHAR() FOR MIXED DATA	254	SQL_VARBINARY	-3	Variable length character (DBCS or SBCS)
LONG VARCHAR() FOR MIXED DATA	32714	SQL_LONGVARBINARY	-4	Variable length character (DBCS or SBCS)
GRAPHIC()	127	SQL_BINARY	-2	Fixed length graphic (DBCS)
VARGRAPHIC()	127	SQL_VARBINARY	-3	Variable length graphic (DBCS)
LONG VARGRAPHIC	16357	SQL_LONGVARBINARY	-4	Variable length graphic (DBCS)
SMALLINT	2	SQL_SMALLINT	5	2-byte binary integer
INTEGER	4	SQL_INTEGER	4	4-byte binary integer
REAL	4	SQL_REAL	7	4-byte floating point
FLOAT()	4	SQL_REAL	7	4-byte floating point with a precision less than 22
FLOAT()	8	SQL_DOUBLE	8	8-byte floating point with a precision equal to or greater than 22
DOUBLE PRECISION	8	SQL_DOUBLE	8	8-byte floating point

DB2 datatype (TYPE_NAME)	Target datatype maximum physical length	ODBC type	ODBC integer ID (DATA_ TYPE)	DB2 datatype description
DECIMAL()	31	SQL_DECIMAL	3	Packed decimal number
NUMERIC	31	SQL_NUMERIC	2	Zoned decimal number
DATE	10	SQL_DATE	9	Date
TIME	8	SQL_TIME	10	Time
TIMESTAMP	26	SQL_DATETIME	11	Timestamp

REMOTE\_DATATYPE

The REMOTE\_DATATYPE column contains a 32-bit composite datatype value that represents the target database datatype.

The following table describes the datatype value.

Table 12-8: REMOTE\_DATATYPE value

Bit(s)	Description
Bits 0-7	ODBC (target) datatype (can be extended for types not defined in ODBC)
Bit 8	Returns 1 if nullable, 0 if not nullable
Bit 9	Returns 1 if case sensitive, 0 if not case sensitive
Bits 10, 11	Always returns 10 (binary) meaning updatability unknown
Bits 12, 13	Reserved, always returns 00 (binary)
Bits 14, 15	Returns the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• 01 (binary) meaning NEWODBCDATATYPE (used for all except REAL)</li><li>• 10 (binary) meaning NEWUSERTYPE (used for REAL)</li></ul>
For numeric types:	
Bits 16-23	Precision
Bits 24-31	Scale
For non-numeric types:	
Bits 16-31	Length

sp\_databases

Description Returns a list of databases on a target DBMS.

Syntax	<code>sp_databases</code>
Parameters	This procedure does not allow parameters.
Usage	Information is based on the SYSDATABASE system catalog table.
	<b>Results</b> <code>sp_databases</code> returns a list of databases available to the client. Results are ordered by DATABASE_NAME. The lengths for varchar columns shown in the result set tables are maximums; the actual lengths depend on the target database. The following table shows the result set.

**Table 12-9: Result set for `sp_databases`**

Column	Datatype	Description
DATABASE_NAME	varchar(32) NOT NULL	Name of an available database
DATABASE_SIZE	int	Size of the named database in kilobytes, NULL
REMARKS	varchar(254)	Always NULL

## sp\_datatype\_info

Description	Returns information about a particular datatype or about all supported datatypes.
Syntax	<code>sp_datatype_info [data_type]</code>
Parameters	<code>data_type</code> is the ODBC code number for the specified datatype about which <code>sp_datatype_info</code> returns information. See Table 12-7 on page 217 for a description of these codes.
Usage	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The <code>data_type</code> parameter specifies the ODBC datatype for which information is requested. If this parameter is not provided, <code>sp_datatype_info</code> returns information about all supported datatypes.</li> <li>This function corresponds to the ODBC function <code>SQLGetTypeInfo</code>.</li> </ul>
	<b>Results</b> <code>sp_datatype_info</code> returns a list of datatypes with information about each. Results are ordered by the following columns:

- DATA\_TYPE
- TYPE\_NAME

The DatatypeInfo property specifies whether information is returned about T-SQL datatypes or target database datatypes. For configuration information, see “DatatypeInfo” on page 30.

The lengths for varchar columns shown in the result set tables are maximums; the actual lengths depend on the target database.

The following table shows the result set.

**Table 12-10: Result set for sp\_datatype\_info**

Column	Datatype	Description
TYPE_NAME	varchar(128) NOT NULL	Name of the T-SQL datatype or the target database datatype that corresponds to the ODBC datatype in the DATA_TYPE column.
DATA_TYPE	smallint NOT NULL	ODBC datatype to which all columns of this type are mapped.
PRECISION	int	Maximum precision allowed for this datatype. (NULL is returned for datatypes where precision is not applicable.)
LITERAL_PREFIX	varchar(128)	Character(s) used to prefix a literal; NULL is returned for datatypes where a literal prefix is not applicable.
LITERAL_SUFFIX	varchar(128)	Character(s) used to mark the end of a literal; NULL is returned for datatypes where a literal suffix is not applicable.
CREATE_PARAMS	varchar(128)	Description of the creation parameters required for this datatype (for example: precision and scale); NULL is returned if the datatype does not have creation parameters.
NULLABLE	smallint NOT NULL	Indicates whether the datatype accepts NULL values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• 0 means the column does not accept NULL values.</li><li>• 1 means the column accepts NULL values.</li></ul>

Column	Datatype	Description
CASE_SENSITIVE	smallint NOT NULL	Indicates whether the datatype distinguishes between uppercase and lowercase characters: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0 means the datatype is not a character type or is not case sensitive.</li> <li>• 1 means the datatype is a character type and is case sensitive.</li> </ul>
SEARCHABLE	smallint NOT NULL	Indicates how this datatype is used in where clauses: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0 means the datatype cannot be used in a where clause.</li> <li>• 1 means the datatype can be used in a where clause.</li> </ul>
UNSIGNED_ATTRIBUTE	smallint	Indicates whether this attribute is unsigned: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0 means the datatype is signed.</li> <li>• 1 means the datatype is unsigned.</li> <li>• NULL means the datatype is not numeric.</li> </ul>
MONEY	smallint NOT NULL	Indicates whether this is a money datatype: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0 means it is not a money datatype.</li> <li>• 1 means it is a money datatype.</li> </ul>
AUTO_INCREMENT	smallint	Indicates whether this datatype automatically increments: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0 means columns of this datatype do not automatically increment.</li> <li>• 1 means columns of this datatype automatically increment.</li> <li>• NULL means the column is not numeric and does not have a sign.</li> </ul>
LOCAL_TYPE_NAME	varchar(128)	The database name or the T-SQL name for the datatype.
MINIMUM_SCALE	smallint	Minimum scale for the datatype; NULL if scale is not applicable.
MAXIMUM_SCALE	smallint	Maximum scale for the datatype; NULL if scale is not applicable.

## sp\_fkeys

Description	Returns primary and foreign key information for the specified table or tables. Foreign keys must be declared using the ANSI integrity constraint mechanism.
Syntax	<code>sp_fkeys <i>pktable_name</i> [, <i>pktable_owner</i>] [, <i>pktable_qualifier</i>] [, <i>fktable_name</i>] [, <i>fktable_owner</i>] [, <i>fktable_qualifier</i>]</code>
Parameters	<p><i>pktable_name</i> is the name of the table containing the primary key. Views, aliases, and wildcard-character search patterns are not supported. You must specify either this parameter or the <i>fktable_name</i> parameter, or both. Views and aliases are not supported.</p> <p><i>pktable_owner</i> is the owner of the table containing the primary key. Views, aliases, and wildcard-character search patterns are not supported. If you do not specify this parameter, <i>sp_fkeys</i> looks first for a table owned by the current user and then for a table owned by the database owner.</p> <p><i>pktable_qualifier</i> is ignored. Leave blank or set to NULL.</p> <p><i>fktable_name</i> is the name of the table containing the foreign key. Wildcard-character search patterns are not supported. Views and aliases are not supported.</p> <p><i>fktable_owner</i> is the owner of the table containing the foreign key. Wildcard-character search patterns are not supported. If you do not specify this parameter, <i>sp_fkeys</i> looks first for a table owned by the current user and then for a table owned by the database owner.</p> <p><i>fktable_qualifier</i> is ignored. Leave blank or set to NULL.</p>
Usage	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• This function corresponds to the ODBC function SQLForeignKeys.</li><li>• Information is based on the SYSCOLUMNS, SYSFOREIGNKEYS, SYSINDEXES, SYSRELS, and SYSSYNONYMS system catalog tables.</li><li>• For information about creating a foreign key, see the appropriate <i>IBM DATABASE 2 SQL Reference</i> manual.</li></ul>
Results	<p><i>sp_fkeys</i> returns a row for each column that is part of the foreign key or primary key in a primary key/foreign key relationship.</p>

Results are ordered by the following columns:

- PKTABLE\_OWNER
- PKTABLE\_NAME
- KEY\_SEQ

The lengths for varchar columns shown in the result set tables are maximums; the actual lengths depend on the target database.

The following table shows the result set.

**Table 12-11: Result set for *sp\_fkeys***

Column	Datatype	Description
PKTABLE_QUALIFIER	varchar(128)	NULL.
PKTABLE_OWNER	varchar(128)	Primary key table owner.
PKTABLE_NAME	varchar(128) NOT NULL	Primary key table name.
PKCOLUMN_NAME	varchar(128) NOT NULL	Primary key column name.
FKTABLE_QUALIFIER	varchar(128)	NULL.
FKTABLE_OWNER	varchar(128)	Foreign key table owner.
FKTABLE_NAME	varchar(128) NOT NULL	Foreign key table name.
FKCOLUMN_NAME	varchar(128) NOT NULL	Foreign key column name.
KEY_SEQ	smallint NOT NULL	Column sequence number in key (starting with 1).
UPDATE_RULE	smallint	Action to be applied to the foreign key when the SQL operation is update: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0 means cascade.</li> <li>• 1 means restrict.</li> <li>• 2 means set null.</li> <li>• NULL means not applicable to the target database.</li> </ul>
DELETE_RULE	smallint	Action to be applied to the foreign key when the SQL operation is delete: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0 means cascade.</li> <li>• 1 means restrict.</li> <li>• 2 means set null.</li> <li>• NULL means not applicable to the target database.</li> </ul>
FK_NAME	varchar(128)	Foreign key identifier; NULL if not applicable to the target database.
PK_NAME	varchar(128)	Primary key identifier; NULL if not applicable to the target database.

## sp\_pkeys

Description	Returns primary key information for the specified table or tables.
Syntax	<code>sp_pkeys table_name [, table_owner] [, table_qualifier]</code>
Parameters	<p><i>table_name</i> is the name of the table. Wildcard-character search patterns are not supported. Views and aliases are not supported.</p> <p><i>table_owner</i> is the owner of the table. Wildcard-character search patterns are not supported. If you do not specify this parameter, sp_pkeys looks first for a table owned by the current user and then for a table owned by the database owner.</p> <p><i>table_qualifier</i> is ignored. Leave blank or set to NULL.</p>
Usage	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• This function corresponds to the ODBC function SQLPrimaryKeys.</li><li>• Information is based on the SYSINDEXES, SYSKEYS, and SYSSYNONYMS system catalog tables.</li><li>• For information about creating a foreign key, see the appropriate <i>IBM DATABASE 2 SQL Reference</i>.</li></ul>
Results	<p>sp_pkeys returns a row for each column in the primary key. Results are ordered by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• TABLE_OWNER</li><li>• TABLE_NAME</li><li>• KEY_SEQ</li></ul> <p>The lengths for varchar columns shown in the result set tables are maximums; the actual lengths depend on the target database.</p> <p>The following table shows the result set.</p>



**Table 12-12: Result set for *sp\_pkeys***

Column	Datatype	Description
TABLE_QUALIFIER	varchar(128)	NULL
TABLE_OWNER	varchar(128)	Primary key table owner (authorization ID)
TABLE_NAME	varchar(128)	Primary key table name
	NOT NULL	
COLUMN_NAME	varchar(128)	Primary key column name
	NOT NULL	
KEY_SEQ	smallint	Sequence number of the column in a multi-column primary key
	NOT NULL	
PK_NAME	varchar(128)	Primary key identifier; NULL if not applicable to the target database

## sp\_server\_info

- Description** Returns a list of attribute names and matching values for the target DBMS.
- Syntax** `sp_server_info [attribute_id]`
- Parameters** *attribute\_id*  
is the integer ID of the attribute. Wildcard-character search patterns are not supported.
- Usage**
- If the *attribute\_id* parameter is not provided, `sp_server_info` returns information about all attributes.
  - This function does not correspond to any ODBC function, but returns some of the information returned by `SQLGetInfo`.

### Results

`sp_server_info` returns a list of the requested attributes and their values.

The lengths for varchar columns shown in the result set tables are maximums; the actual lengths depend on the target database.

The following table shows the result set.

**Table 12-13: Result set for *sp\_server\_info***

Column	Datatype	Description
ATTRIBUTE_ID	int NOT NULL	Numeric identifier of the attribute
ATTRIBUTE_NAME	varchar(60)	Attribute name
ATTRIBUTE_VALUE	varchar(254)	Attribute value

# sp\_special\_columns

Description	<p>Retrieves the following information about columns within a specified table or view:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The optimal set of columns that uniquely identify a row in the table or view</li><li>• A list of the columns that are automatically updated when any value in the row is updated</li></ul>
Syntax	<p><code>sp_special_columns table_name [, table_owner]</code> <code>[, table_qualifier] [, col_type]</code></p>
Parameters	<p><i>table_name</i> is the name of the table. Views, aliases, and wildcard-character search patterns are not supported. Views and aliases are not supported.</p> <p><i>table_owner</i> is the owner of the table. Views, aliases, and wildcard-character search patterns are not supported. If you do not specify this parameter, <code>sp_special_columns</code> looks first for a table owned by the current user and then for a table owned by the database owner.</p> <p><i>table_qualifier</i> is ignored. Leave blank or set to NULL.</p> <p><i>col_type</i> is a value that requests information about columns of a specific type as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• R returns information about columns with values that uniquely identify any row in the table.</li><li>• V returns information about columns with values that are automatically generated by a target each time a row is inserted or updated.</li></ul>
Usage	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• This function corresponds to the ODBC function <code>SQLSpecialColumns</code>.</li></ul>

- Information is based on the SYSINDEXES, SYSKEYS, and SYSCOLUMNS system catalog tables.

#### Results

`sp_special_columns` returns information about the columns that uniquely identify a row in a table.

The result set consists of a row for each column of an index that uniquely identifies each row of the table. If there are multiple unique indexes on a table, the one that is described by the result set is the first that exists in the following list:

- A primary key with clustered index
- A primary key without clustered index
- A unique, clustered index
- A unique, non-clustered index

The result set is ordered by the column name in the index.

The lengths for varchar columns shown in the result set tables are maximums; the actual lengths depend on the target database.

The following table shows the result set.

**Table 12-14: Result set for *sp\_special\_columns***

Column	Datatype	Description
SCOPE	smallint NOT NULL	Actual scope of the row ID: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• 0 SQL_SCOPE_CURROW</li><li>• 1 SQL_SCOPE_TRANSACTION</li></ul>
COLUMN_NAME	varchar(128) NOT NULL	Column name
DATA_TYPE	smallint NOT NULL	ODBC datatype to which all columns of this type are mapped
TYPE_NAME	varchar(128) NOT NULL	Name of the target database datatype that corresponds to the ODBC datatype in the DATA_TYPE column
PRECISION	int	Maximum precision for the datatype in the target database; NULL if precision is not applicable
LENGTH	int	Length of the column in bytes
SCALE	smallint	Number of digits to the right of the decimal point; NULL if scale is not applicable
PSEUDO_COLUMN	smallint	Indicates whether the column is a pseudo-column; the DB2 access service always returns: 0 SQL_PC_UNKNOWN

## sp\_sproc\_columns

Description	Returns descriptive information for the input and return parameters for stored procedures in the current environment.
Syntax	<code>sp_sproc_columns sp_name [, sp_owner] [, sp_qualifier] [, column_name]</code>
Parameters	<i>sp_name</i> is the name of the stored procedure. Use the wildcard character to request information about more than one stored procedure.

*sp\_owner*

is the owner of the stored procedure. Use the wildcard character to request information about stored procedures owned by more than one user. If you do not specify this parameter, *sp\_sproc\_columns* looks first for a procedure owned by the current user and then for a procedure owned by the database owner.

*sp\_qualifier*

is ignored. Leave blank or set to NULL.

*column\_name*

is the set of columns to be included in the result set. Use the wildcard character to request information about more than one column. If you do not supply a *column\_name* parameter, *sp\_sproc\_columns* returns information about all columns for the stored procedure.

## Usage

- The access service selects information from the SYSPROCCOLUMNS table. The *cspdb2.sql* script creates this table during installation of DirectConnect. However, you need to update the SYSPROCCOLUMNS table manually.
- This function corresponds to the ODBC function SQLProcedureColumns.

## Results

*sp\_sproc\_columns* returns a list of available procedures. Results are ordered by the following columns:

- PROCEDURE\_OWNER
- PROCEDURE\_NAME
- COLUMN\_TYPE

The lengths for varchar columns shown in the result set tables are maximums; the actual lengths depend on the target database.

The following table shows the result set for *sp\_sproc\_columns*.

**Table 12-15: Result set for *sp\_sproc\_columns***

Column	Datatype	Description
PROCEDURE_QUALIFIER	varchar(128)	Always NULL
PROCEDURE_OWNER	varchar(128)	Value from the corresponding column of SYSPROCCOLUMNS table
PROCEDURE_NAME	varchar(128) NOT NULL	Name of the stored procedure
COLUMN_NAME	varchar(128) NOT NULL	Name of the input parameter or result set column

Column	Datatype	Description
COLUMN_TYPE	smallint NOT NULL	Type of data in this procedure column: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• 1 SQL_PARAM_INPUT – the procedure column is an input parameter</li><li>• 3 SQL_RESULT_COL – the procedure column is a result set column</li></ul>
DATA_TYPE	smallint NOT NULL	Integer code for the ODBC SQL datatype equivalent of the target database datatype for this procedure column
TYPE_NAME	varchar(128) NOT NULL	String representing the datatype name in the target database
PRECISION	int	Precision of the procedure column on the target database; NULL if precision is not applicable
LENGTH	int	Length of the column in bytes
SCALE	smallint	Number of digits to the right of the decimal point; NULL if scale is not applicable
RADIX	smallint	Base for numeric types; NULL if radix is not applicable
NULLABLE	smallint	Indicates whether the procedure column accepts NULL values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• 0 – the column does not accept NULL</li><li>• 1 – the column accepts NULL</li><li>• 2 – it is not known if the column accepts NULL values</li></ul>
REMARKS	varchar(254)	Description of the procedure column

## sp\_statistics

Description	Returns statistics information for a single table and the indexes associated with that table.
Syntax	<code>sp_statistics table_name [, table_owner]</code> <code>[, table_qualifier] [, index_name] [, is_unique]</code>
Parameters	<i>table_name</i> is name of the table. Views, aliases, and wildcard-character search patterns are not supported. Views and aliases are not supported.

*table\_owner*

is the owner of the database object about which column privilege information is requested. Wildcard-character search patterns are not supported. If you do not specify this parameter, `sp_statistics` looks first for a table owned by the current user and then for a table owned by the database owner.

*table\_qualifier*

is ignored. Leave blank or set to NULL.

*index\_name*

is the name of the index. Wildcard-character search patterns are not supported.

*is\_unique*

is one of the following values:

“Y” if unique indexes are to be returned

“N” if unique indexes are not to be returned

## Usage

- If *index\_name* is specified, `sp_statistics` returns only information about that index.
- This function corresponds to the ODBC function `SQLStatistics`.

## Results

`sp_statistics` returns information about the named table. Results are ordered by the following columns:

- NON\_UNIQUE
- TYPE
- INDEX\_QUALIFIER
- INDEX\_NAME
- SEQ\_IN\_INDEX

The lengths for varchar columns shown in the result set tables are maximums; the actual lengths depend on the target database.

The following table shows the result set.

**Table 12-16: Result set for `sp_statistics`**

Column	Datatype	Description
TABLE_QUALIFIER	varchar(128)	Always NULL.
TABLE_OWNER	varchar(128)	Table owner authorization ID.
TABLE_NAME	varchar(128)	Name of the table or view. NOT NULL

Column	Datatype	Description
NON_UNIQUE	smallint	Indicates whether the index permits duplicate values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• 0 (FALSE) means the index prohibits duplicate values.</li><li>• 1 (TRUE) means the index allows duplicate values.</li><li>• NULL is returned if TYPE is SQL_TABLE_STAT.</li></ul>
INDEX_QUALIFIER	varchar(128)	Always NULL
INDEX_NAME	varchar(128)	Index name; NULL is returned if TYPE is SQL_TABLE_STAT.
TYPE	smallint NOT NULL	Type of information returned: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• 0 SQL_TABLE_STAT means statistics for a table.</li><li>• 1 SQL_INDEX_CLUSTERED means a clustered index.</li><li>• 2 SQL_INDEX_HASHED means a hashed index.</li><li>• 3 SQL_INDEX_OTHER means another type of index.</li></ul>
SEQ_IN_INDEX	smallint	Sequence of the column in the index (the first column is 1); NULL is returned if TYPE is SQL_TABLE_STAT.
COLUMN_NAME	varchar(128)	Column name; NULL is returned if TYPE is SQL_TABLE_STAT.
COLLATION	char(1)	Sort sequence for the column: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• A means ascending.</li><li>• D means descending.</li><li>• NULL is returned if TYPE is SQL_TABLE_STAT.</li></ul>
CARDINALITY	int	Cardinality of the table or index: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Number of rows in the table if TYPE is SQL_TABLE_STAT.</li><li>• Number of unique values in the index if TYPE is not SQL_TABLE_STAT.</li><li>• NULL if the value is not available from the target database.</li></ul>
PAGES	int	Number of pages used to store the index or table: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Number of pages used to store the table if TYPE is SQL_TABLE_STAT.</li><li>• Number of pages used to store the index if TYPE is not SQL_TABLE_STAT.</li><li>• NULL if this information is not available from the target database.</li></ul>
FILTER_CONDITION	varchar(128)	If the index is a filtered index, this is the filter condition; if the filter condition cannot be determined, this is an empty string.  NULL is returned if the index is not a filtered index or TYPE is SQL_TABLE_STAT.



## sp\_stored\_procedures

- Description** Returns a list of available procedures.
- Syntax** `sp_stored_procedures [sp_name] [, sp_owner] [, sp_qualifier]`
- Parameters**
- sp\_name*  
is the stored procedure name. Use the wildcard character to request information about more than one stored procedure. If left blank, `sp_stored_procedures` returns information for all procedures.
- sp\_owner*  
is the owner of the stored procedure. Use the wildcard character to request information about procedures owned by more than one user.
- sp\_qualifier*  
is ignored. Leave blank or set to NULL.
- Usage**
- The DB2 access service selects information from the SYSPROCEDURES table. The *cspdb2.sql* script creates this table during installation of DirectConnect.
  - This function corresponds to the ODBC function SQLProcedures.

### Results

`sp_stored_procedures` lists and describes stored procedures. Results are ordered by the following columns:

- *PROCEDURE\_QUALIFIER*
- *PROCEDURE\_OWNER*
- *PROCEDURE\_NAME*

The lengths for varchar columns shown in the result set tables are maximums; the actual lengths depend on the target database.

The following table describes the result set.

**Table 12-17: Result set for `sp_stored_procedures`**

Column	Datatype	Description
PROCEDURE_QUALIFIER	varchar(128)	Always NULL.
PROCEDURE_OWNER	varchar(128)	Procedure owner.
PROCEDURE_NAME	varchar(128) NOT NULL	Procedure name.
NUM_INPUT_PARAMS	int NOT NULL	Number of input parameters in the stored procedure. -1 means the number of input parameters is unknown.

Column	Datatype	Description
NUM_OUTPUT_PARAMS	int	Number of return parameters in the stored procedure.
	NOT NULL	-1 means the number of return parameters is unknown.
NUM_RESULT_SETS	int	Number of result sets returned by the stored procedure.
	NOT NULL	-1 means the number of result sets is unknown.
REMARKS	varchar(254)	A description of the procedure.
PROCEDURE_TYPE	smallint	Defines the procedure type: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>0 SQL_PT_UNKNOWN if it cannot be determined whether the procedure returns a value.</li> <li>1 SQL_PT_PROCEDURE if the returned object is a procedure; it does not have a return value.</li> <li>2 SQL_PT_FUNCTION if the returned object is a function; it has a return value.</li> </ul>

## sp\_table\_privileges

Description	Returns privilege information for one or more database objects.
Syntax	<code>sp_table_privileges table_name [, table_owner]</code> <code>[, table_qualifier]</code>
Parameters	<p><i>table_name</i> is the name of the table. Use the wildcard character to request information about more than one table. Aliases are not supported.</p> <p><i>table_owner</i> is the owner of the database object about which column privilege information is requested. Use the wildcard character to request information about tables owned by more than one user. If you do not specify this parameter, <code>sp_table_privileges</code> looks first for a table owned by the current user and then for a table owned by the database owner.</p> <p><i>table_qualifier</i> is ignored. Leave blank or set to NULL.</p>
Usage	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The DB2 access service selects information from the SYSTABAUTH system catalog table.</li> <li>This function corresponds to the ODBC function SQLTablePrivileges.</li> </ul>

### Results

`sp_table_privileges` returns a list of one or more database objects with privilege information about each. Results are ordered by the following columns:

- TABLE\_OWNER
- TABLE\_NAME
- PRIVILEGE

The lengths for varchar columns shown in the result set tables are maximums; the actual lengths depend on the target database.

The following table shows the result set.

**Table 12-18: Result set for `sp_table_privileges`**

Column name	Datatype	Notes
TABLE_QUALIFIER	varchar (128)	Always NULL.
TABLE_OWNER	varchar (128)	Table owner identifier (authorization ID).
TABLE_NAME	varchar (128) NOT NULL	Name of the database object about which privilege information is returned.
GRANTOR	varchar (128)	Identifies the user who granted this privilege; NULL if not applicable to the target database.
GRANTEE	varchar (128) NOT NULL	Identifies the user to whom this privilege was granted.
PRIVILEGE	varchar (128) NOT NULL	Identifies the privilege granted to the grantee on this object as one of the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• SELECT if the grantee is authorized to select rows in the associated object.</li> <li>• INSERT if the grantee is authorized to insert rows into the associated object.</li> <li>• UPDATE if the grantee is authorized to update rows in the associated object.</li> <li>• REFERENCES if the grantee is authorized to refer to one or more columns of the table within a constraint (for example: unique, referential, or table check constraint).</li> </ul>

GRANTOR	varchar (128)	Identifies the user who granted this privilege; NULL if not applicable to the target database.
GRANTEE	varchar (128) NOT NULL	Identifies the user to whom this privilege was granted.
PRIVILEGE	varchar (128) NOT NULL	Identifies the privilege granted to the grantee on this object as one of the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• SELECT if the grantee is authorized to select rows in the associated object.</li><li>• INSERT if the grantee is authorized to insert rows into the associated object.</li><li>• UPDATE if the grantee is authorized to update rows in the associated object.</li><li>• REFERENCES if the grantee is authorized to refer to one or more columns of the table within a constraint (for example: unique, referential, or table check constraint).</li></ul>

## sp\_tables

Description	Returns a list of objects stored in the database.
Syntax	<code>sp_tables [table_name] [, table_owner] [, table_qualifier] [, table_type]</code>
Parameters	<p><i>table_name</i> is the name of the table. Use the wildcard character to request information about more than one table.</p>

*table\_owner*

is the owner of the table. Use the wildcard character to request information about tables owned by more than one user.

*table\_qualifier*

is ignored. Leave empty or set to NULL.

*table\_type*

is a list of values, separated by commas, requesting information about all objects of a specific type(s) as follows:

“‘TABLE’, ‘SYSTEM TABLE’, ‘VIEW’, ‘ALIAS’, ‘SYNONYM’”

---

**Note** You must enclose each table type with single quotation marks, and enclose the entire parameter with double quotation marks. Enter table types in uppercase.

---

#### Usage

- The DB2 access service CSP configuration properties limit the set of object types for which information is returned. Using the *table\_type* parameter, the object types can be more limited, but not less limited. For example, if the DB2 access service CSP configuration properties indicate that only tables and views are included and the *table\_type* parameter specifies all object types are included, *sp\_tables* only returns information about tables and views. For information, see “Catalog Stored Procedure properties” on page 27.
- The DB2 access service selects information from the SYSSYNONYMS, SYSTABAUTH, and SYSTABLES system catalog tables.
- This function corresponds to the ODBC function SQLTables.

#### Results

*sp\_tables* returns a list of database objects. Results are ordered by the following columns:

- *TABLE\_TYPE*
- *TABLE\_OWNER*
- *TABLE\_NAME*

The lengths for varchar columns shown in the result set tables are maximums; the actual lengths depend on the target database.

The following table shows the result set.

**Table 12-19: Result set for sp\_tables**

Column	Datatype	Description
TABLE_QUALIFIER	varchar(128)	Always NULL
TABLE_OWNER	varchar(128)	Table owner
TABLE_NAME	varchar(128)	Name of the object about which information is returned
TABLE_TYPE	varchar(128) NOT NULL	One of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• 'ALIAS'</li><li>• 'SYNONYM'</li><li>• 'SYSTEM TABLE'</li><li>• 'TABLE'</li><li>• 'VIEW'</li></ul>
REMARKS	varchar(254)	A description of the table or NULL

# Retrieving Information with System Procedures

System procedures are Sybase-supplied stored procedures that return information about the DB2 access service and the target database. This chapter describes the system procedures that a DB2 access service supports.

If a DB2 access service cannot support a procedure, that procedure returns a correctly formatted result set containing zero rows.

A client application initiates a system procedure in the same way that it initiates a CSP. For instructions to code both CSP and system procedures, see “Coding instructions” on page 208.

This chapter contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
sp_capabilities	239
sp_groups	242
sp_helpserver	242
sp_password	243
sp_sqlgetinfo	245

## sp\_capabilities

Description	Returns the SQL capabilities of a DB2 access service.
Syntax	sp_capabilities
Parameters	None. This procedure does not allow parameters.
Usage	The result set contains information that allows applications to successfully interact with a DB2 access service during normal query processing.
Results	The following table shows the result set:

**Table 13-1: Result set for sp\_capabilities**

Column	Datatype	Description
ID	int	Capability ID
CAPABILITY_NAME	char(30)	Capability name
VALUE	int	Capability value
DESCRIPTION	char(128)	Capability description

The following table shows the ID and values for several DB2 access service functional capabilities:

**Table 13-2: sp\_capabilities information**

ID	Capability	Value description
101	SQL syntax	1=Sybase T-SQL supported 2=DB2 SQL supported
102	Join handling	0=Unsupported 1=No outer join supported 2=T-SQL support 3=Oracle supported
103	Aggregate handling	0=Unsupported 1=ANSI supported 2=All functions
104	AND predicates	0=Unsupported 1=Supported
105	OR predicates	0=Unsupported 1=Supported
106	LIKE predicates	0=Unsupported 1=ANSI-style supported 2=T-SQL supported
107	Bulk insert handling	0=Unsupported 1=Supported
108	Text and image handling	0=Unsupported 1=Text, no textptr 2=Text and textptr
109	Transaction handling	0=Unsupported 1=Local supported 2=Two-phase commit supported
110	Text pattern handling	0=Unsupported 1=Pattern (text) supported
111	order by	0=Unsupported 1=Supported



ID	Capability	Value description
112	group by	0=Unsupported 1=ANSI supported 2=T-SQL supported
113	Net password encryption	0=Unsupported 1=Supported
114	Object case sensitivity	0=Case insensitive 1=Case sensitive
115	distinct	0=Unsupported 1=Supported
116	Wild card escape	0=Unsupported Non-zero=Escape_char(s)
117	Union handling	0=Unsupported 1=Supported
118	String functions	0=Unsupported 1=Substring supported 2=Oracle subset supported 3=T-SQL supported
119	Expression handling	0=Unsupported 1=ANSI supported 2=T-SQL supported
120	Character truncation	0=Fixed length character parameters may contain trailing blanks 1=Fixed length character parameters will not contain trailing blanks
121	Language events	0=Unsupported 1=T-SQL DML without datetime in the where clause supported 2=T-SQL DML supported
122	Date functions	0=Unsupported 1=T-SQL date functions supported
123	Math functions	0=Unsupported 1=Oracle functions supported 2=T-SQL math functions supported
124	T-SQL convert functions	0=Unsupported 1=Supported
125	T-SQL delete/update	0=Sybase extensions not supported 1=Sybase extensions supported
126	Insert/select handling	0=Unsupported 1=Supported
127	Subquery handling	0=Unsupported 1=Supported

ID	Capability	Value description
128	IN/NOT IN support	0=Unsupported 1=Supported
129	CASE support	0=Unsupported 1=Supported

## sp\_groups

Description Returns a list of groups to which the current user belongs.

Syntax sp\_groups

Parameters None.  
This procedure does not allow parameters.

Usage Results

The following table shows the result set:

**Table 13-3: Result set for sp\_groups**

Column	Datatype	Description
GROUP_NAME	char(8)	Group Name (Authorization ID)

## sp\_helpserver

Description Provides the user with a report containing the following rows of information:

- Row 1: the version of Open Server currently in use
- Row 2: the version of DirectConnect server currently in use
- Row 3: the version of the DB2 Access Service Library currently in use
- Row 4: the version of the DBMS with which an access service is associated

Syntax sp\_helpserver

Parameters This procedure does not allow parameters.

Usage Results

The following table shows the sp\_helpserver result set.

**Table 13-4: Result set for *sp\_helpserve***

Column name	Datatype	Description
SERVER_PROPERTY	varchar(32)	Server property name
PROPERTY_VALUE	varchar(32)	Server property value

## sp\_password

Description	Changes or queries the current status of the user's password.
Syntax	<p>To change the user's password, use the following syntax: <code>sp_password old_password, new_password, [login_name]</code></p> <p>To query the current status of the user's password, use the following syntax: <code>sp_password</code></p>
Parameters	<p><i>old_password</i> is the current password for the user of this procedure or login name.</p> <p><i>new_password</i> is the new password for the user. The new password must conform to the rules required on the DBMS in which the password change is to take effect.</p> <p><i>login_name</i> is the login name of the user whose password is to be changed.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note</b> The mainframe security system rejects the request if the user lacks the authority to change another user's password.</p> <hr/>
Usage	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>You can program your client applications to use <code>sp_password</code> to avoid password expiration problems. Program an application to issue <code>sp_password</code> upon application start-up, and prompt the user for a new password if the existing password is close to expiration. Also, you can build a simple application that reads user IDs and passwords from a file and executes <code>sp_password</code> to make the appropriate modifications.</li></ul>

- For DB2, the DB2 access service invokes the CICS transaction called Password Expiration Manager (PEM). PEM is a password management program that IBM provides with CICS 3.3 through an optional PTF UN90057. PEM is available only for connections to the mainframe using LU 6.2. It is not available for TCP/IP connections.

---

**Note** To change the setting of the CICS SIT table property, ask the CICS system programmer and the external security manager. The SIT property defines the intersystem refresh delay, which determines how long users remain signed on to the host when running transactions with the InterSystem Communication (ISC) setting. Its setting can affect the ability of users to log in more than once or to run multiple host transactions from TRS within the defined time period. By default, the delay is set to 30 minutes. Sybase recommends setting ISRDELAY=0.

---

#### Results

The following table shows the result set:

**Table 13-5: Result set for sp\_password**

Column	Datatype	Possible return values and descriptions
RETURN_CODE	smallint	0 = The PEM operation returned no errors. 1 = The user ID was not found on the host. 2 = The password is incorrect. 3 = No new password was specified and the old password expired. 4 = The host security system rejected the new password. 5 = A security function failure occurred. Your password account may be revoked. 6 = An invalid request was made to PEM. The new or old password may be in an unacceptable format. 7 = General security error. 8 = Password change completed but signon failed.
CURRENT_DATE	datetime	Date and time of current successful signon.
LAST_DATE	datetime	Date and time of last successful signon.
EXPIRE_DATE	datetime	Date and time password will expire.
REVOKE_COUNT	smallint	Number of unsuccessful signon attempts since the last successful signon with this user ID.

## sp\_sqlgetinfo

Description	Provides information about SQL parameters that the target database supports for the specified attribute.
Syntax	<code>sp_sqlgetinfo [attribute_name]</code>
Parameters	<p><i>attribute_name</i></p> <p>is the name of the attribute about which information is requested. Wildcard characters are supported.</p>
Usage	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the attribute is not found in the internal table, the DB2 access service returns an empty result set.</li> <li>• If a parameter is not provided, the DB2 access service returns a result set of all supported attributes.</li> <li>• This stored procedure provides SQL grammar, syntax, and capabilities that are supported on the target database.</li> <li>• The DB2 access service stores this information in a file that you can modify if necessary. The <code>SQLInformationFile</code> property specifies the path and file name. For more information, see “<code>SQLInformationFile</code>” on page 31.</li> </ul>

### Results

The following table shows the `sp_sqlgetinfo` result set.

**Table 13-6: Result set for `sp_sqlgetinfo`**

Column Name	Datatype	Description
ATTRIBUTE_ID	int not NULL	The numeric identifier for the attribute
ATTRIBUTE_NAME	varchar(30) not NULL	The name of the attribute
ATTRIBUTE_VALUE	varchar(255) NULL	The value of the attribute



## RSPs and Host-Resident Requests

This chapter describes how to create, execute, and delete an RSP and a host-resident request

This chapter contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
Creating RSPs	247
Executing remote stored procedures	248
Creating host-resident requests	250
Executing host-resident requests	251
Deleting host-resident requests	252

For more information about how to create and execute an RSP, see the *Open ServerConnect Programmer's Guide for Remote Stored Procedures*.

### Creating RSPs

An RSP is a customer-written CICS program that resides on the mainframe. You can write an RSP in any one of the following languages:

- assembler
- COBOL II
- PL/1
- C

An RSP can use any CICS resource or access any CICS data source.

In an RSP, the DB2 access service recognizes argument values that are enclosed in either single or double quotes. Quoted argument values must be in the proper case. The entire statement has a 32KB size limit.

## Executing remote stored procedures

A client application executes an RSP by issuing a command appropriate for the SQL transformation mode in effect.

The DB2 access service passes this request to the MainframeConnect for DB2 UDB access module, AMD2, which performs a CICS link to the specified RSP. If it does not find a procedure by that name, it searches the host request library (see “Executing host-resident requests” on page 251 for more information). The DB2 access service returns all results generated by the RSP to the client application.

### In passthrough mode

A client application executes an RSP by issuing a use procedure command as follows:

```
use procedure [with [binary] data] procedurename [arglist];  
[input data]
```

where:

- *procedurename* is the name of the RSP.
- *arglist* is the list of arguments.
- *input data* is the binary data.

A client application can send input data only when the SQL transformation mode is passthrough mode (or TSQL0 or TSQL1 backward compatible modes).

### with binary data clause

If the with binary data clause is specified, you must configure the DB2 access service DefaultClientCodeset and DefaultTargetCodeset properties to unequal values. For example:

```
{ACS Required}  
DefaultClientCodeset=850  
DefaultTargetCodeset=500
```

These unequal property value settings enable the DB2 access service to recognize that all data between the semicolon and the end of the buffer is binary.

If the property values are equal, the DB2 access service performs ASCII and EBCDIC translation with the data records.



## with data clause

If the with data clause is specified, the DB2 access service assumes that each line following the semicolon (;) is a data record. A single line with a semicolon follows the last record. The DB2 access service performs ASCII and EBCDIC translation with the data records.

## Examples

The following examples show how to execute an RSP in passthrough mode:

```
use procedure bob &ARG1=red &ARG2=blue
use procedure bob this is variable text
```

---

**Note** Do not confuse the use procedure syntax with a T-SQL use command, which specifies an Adaptive Server database context.

---

## In sybase mode

A client application executes an RSP by issuing an execute command as follows:

```
exec procedurename [arglist];
execute procedurename [arglist];
```

## Examples

Following are examples of executing an RSP in sybase mode:

```
exec bob @arg1=red, @arg2=blue
execute bob this is variable text
```

The client application cannot send input pipes when in sybase mode (or TSQL2 backward-compatible mode).

---

**Note** RSPs do not support IXF records.

---

## Creating host-resident requests

The DB2 access service supports host-resident requests, which are SQL statements stored in a special DB2 table called the host request library. A client application executes a host-resident request the same way it executes an RSP.

Rather than the client application issuing the SQL directly, you can define the statement and then have the client application execute the statement as a procedure. A host-resident request gives you more control over the SQL that a client application generates.

To add a request to the host request library, a client application executes a `create request` or a `create procedure` statement that contains the request name and the SQL text. The user who issues the statement must have all necessary privileges on the host request library table.

The following restrictions apply to a host-resident request:

- It must be a single SQL statement.
- Its name must be eight characters or less.
- Its maximum length is 32,000 characters.

### In passthrough mode

When in passthrough mode (or TSQL0 or TSQL1 backward-compatible mode), use the following syntax to create a request:

```
create request requestname  
request command
```

For example:

```
create request selauth select * from authors
```

### In sybase mode

When in sybase mode (or TSQL2 backward-compatible mode), use the following syntax to create a request:

```
create procedure requestname as  
request command
```

For example:

```
create procedure selauth as select * from authors
```

The DB2 access service does not support the following create procedure features of Transact-SQL:

- Numbered procedures
- Default parameter argument values
- The with recompile option

The first two cause errors; the third is ignored.

## Executing host-resident requests

A client application executes a host-resident request by issuing a SQL command appropriate for the SQL transformation mode in effect. The DB2 access service passes this request to the MainframeConnect for DB2 access module, AMD2, which retrieves the SQL command and executes it against DB2. The DB2 access service returns all results to the client application.

### In passthrough mode

When in passthrough mode (or TSQL0 or TSQL1 backward compatible mode), use the following syntax to execute a host-resident request:

use request requestname

where *requestname* is the name of the host-resident request.

Some use request statements can be nested: One request can point to a second use request statement, and so on.

---

**Note** Do not confuse the use request syntax with a T-SQL use command, which specifies an Adaptive Server database context.

---

### In sybase mode

When in sybase mode (or TSQL2 backward-compatible mode), execute a host-resident request by using the execute command as follows:

execute requestname

## Variables in host-resident requests

Host-resident requests can contain up to 50 variables with names of any length. In passthrough mode, an ampersand (&) precedes each variable. In sybase mode, an (@) (at) symbol precedes each variable. Variables are specified as follows in passthrough and sybase mode:

passthrough mode:

```
&var1=value1 &var2=value2 ...
```

sybase mode:

```
@var1=value1, @var2=value2
```

### Passthrough mode example

The following example shows how to create and execute a host-resident request with variables when in passthrough mode:

```
create request seltitle select * from titles
where type = &vartitle and total_sales > &varsales
use request seltitle &vartitle='psychology' &varsales=2000
```

### Sybase mode example

The following example shows how to create and execute a host-resident request with variables when in sybase mode:

```
create procedure seltitle as select * from titles
where type = @vartitle and total_sales > @varsales
execute seltitle @vartitle='psychology', @varsales=2000
```

## Deleting host-resident requests

To delete a request, use the appropriate command for the SQL transformation mode in effect.

### In passthrough mode

When in passthrough mode (or TSQL0 or TSQL1 backward-compatible mode), delete a request by using the drop request command as follows:

drop request *requestname*

where *requestname* is the name of the host-resident request.

## In sybase mode

When in sybase mode (or TSQL2 backward-compatible mode), delete a request by using the drop procedure command as follows:

drop procedure *requestname*

where *requestname* is the name of the host-resident request.



# Configuration References and Code Set Tables

This appendix contains quick reference tables for configuration properties and code sets for translation.

This appendix contains the following topics:

Topics	Page
Configuration properties	255
Code set reference tables	258

## Configuration properties

For detailed explanations of configuration properties, see Chapter 2, “Creating and Configuring DB2 Access Services”.

The following table lists DB2 Access Service Library and DB2 access service properties in alphabetical order. The property category represents the subsection heading in the service library configuration file.

**Table A-1: Configuration properties**

Property name	Property values	Property category {subsection name}	Global variable (GV) or set statement (SS)
Allocate	[ connect   request ]	{Target Interaction}	GV and SS
APPCSecurity	[ pgm   none   same ]	{Target Interaction}	none
ApplicationValidationFile	<i>pathfilename</i>	{Client Interaction}	none
BinaryResults	[ binary   char ]	{Datatype Conversion}	GV and SS
CharConvertError	[ reject   truncate ]	{Data Conversion Errors}	GV and SS
ClientDecimalSeparator	<i>char</i>	{Client Interaction}	GV and SS
ClientIdleTimeout	<i>integer</i>	{Client Interaction}	none
ConnectionProtocol	[ lu62   tcpip ]	{ACS Required}	none
ConnectionSpec1	<i>char</i>	{ACS Required}	none

Property name	Property values	Property category {subsection name}	Global variable (GV) or set statement (SS)
ConnectionSpec2	<i>char</i>	{ACS Required}	none
ConnectionSpec3	<i>char</i>	{ACS Required}	none
CSPCatalogQualifier	<i>qualifier</i>	{Catalog Stored Procedures}	GV and SS
CSPDBName	<i>dbname</i>	{Catalog Stored Procedures}	GV and SS
CSPEclusions	[ none   user   nonauth   nonauthpublic ]	{Catalog Stored Procedures}	GV and SS
CSPIncludeAlias	[ no   yes ]	{Catalog Stored Procedures}	GV and SS
CSPIncludeSynonym	[ no   yes ]	{Catalog Stored Procedures}	GV and SS
CSPIncludeSystem	[ no   yes ]	{Catalog Stored Procedures}	GV and SS
CSPIncludeTable	[ yes   no ]	{Catalog Stored Procedures}	GV and SS
CSPIncludeView	[ yes   no ]	{Catalog Stored Procedures}	GV and SS
CSPQualByDBName	[ no   yes ]	{Catalog Stored Procedures}	GV and SS
DatatypeInfo	[ transact   target ]	{Catalog Stored Procedures}	GV and SS
DateResults	[ datetime   datetime4   char_iso   char_usa   char_eur   char_jis   char_odbc ]	{Datatype Conversion}	GV and SS
DateTimeConvertError	[ reject   null   default ]	{Data Conversion Errors}	GV and SS
DateTimeResults	[ datetime   datetime4   char_iso   char_usa   char_eur   char_jis   char_odbc ]	{Datatype Conversion}	GV and SS
DecimalResults	[ autoconvert   int   float   real   char   money   money4   bcd ]	{Datatype Conversion}	GV and SS
DefaultClientCodeset	<i>clientcodeset</i>	{ACS Required}	GV and SS
DefaultDate	<i>yyyy-mm-dd</i>	{Data Conversion Errors}	none
DefaultNum	<i>integer</i>	{Data Conversion Errors}	none
DefaultTargetCodeset	<i>targetcodeset</i>	{ACS Required}	GV
DefaultTime	<i>hh.mm.ss</i>	{Data Conversion Errors}	none
EnableAtStartup	[ no   yes ]	{Client Interaction}	none
FloatResults	[ float   real   char ]	{Datatype Conversion}	GV and SS
GatewayCompatible	[ no   yes ]	{Client Interaction}	GV
GraphicResults	[ binary   char ]	{Datatype Conversion}	GV and SS
Int2Results	[ smallint   char ]	{Datatype Conversion}	GV and SS
Int4Results	[ int   char ]	{Datatype Conversion}	GV and SS
LogConnectionStatistics	[ no   yes ]	{Logging}	none



Property name	Property values	Property category {subsection name}	Global variable (GV) or set statement (SS)
LogReceivedSQL	[ no   yes ]	{Logging}	none
LogRequestStatistics	[ no   yes ]	{Logging}	none
LogServiceStatistics	<i>integer</i>	{Logging}	none
LogSvcLibStatistics	<i>integer</i>	{Logging}	none
LogTargetActivity	[ no   yes ]	{Logging}	none
LogTransferStatistics	[ no   yes ]	{Logging}	none
LogTransformedSQL	[ no   yes ]	{Logging}	none
MaxResultSize	<i>integer</i>	{Client Interaction}	GV and SS
MaxRowsReturned	<i>integer</i>	{Client Interaction}	GV and SS
MaxSvcConnections	<i>integer</i>	{Client Interaction}	GV
NumConvertError	[ reject   null   default ]	{Data Conversion Errors}	GV and SS
PasswordRequired	[ no   yes ]	{Target Interaction}	none
QuotedStringDelimiter	<i>char</i>	{Target Interaction}	none
RealResults	[ float   real   char ]	{Datatype Conversion}	GV and SS
SendWarningMessages	[ no   yes ]	{Client Interaction}	GV and SS
ServiceDescription	<i>char</i>	{Client Interaction}	GV
SvcLibDescription	<i>char</i>	{Client Interaction}	GV
SQLInformationFile	<i>filename</i>	{Catalog Stored Procedures}	none
SQLTransformation	[ passthrough   sybase   tsql0   tsql1   tsql2   db2 ]	{Target Interaction}	GV and SS
StopCondition	[ error   none   warning ]	{Target Interaction}	GV and SS
TargetDebug	[ none   statistics   time   trace ]	{Target Interaction}	GV and SS
TargetDecimalSeparator	<i>char</i> (default is a period)	{Target Interaction}	GV
TargetHasMixedData	[ no   yes ]	{Target Interaction}	none
TextSize	<i>integer</i>	{Client Interaction}	GV and SS
TimeResults	[ datetime   datetime4   char_iso   char_usa   char_eur   char_jis   char_odbc ]	{Datatype Conversion}	GV and SS
TPName	<i>tpname</i>	{ACS Required}	none
TraceEvents	[ no   yes ]	{Tracing}	none
TraceHostCom	[ no   yes ]	{Tracing}	none
TraceInterface	[ no   yes ]	{Tracing}	none
TraceTarget	[ no   yes ]	{Tracing}	none
TransactionMode	[ short   long ]	{Client Interaction}	GV and SS

Property name	Property values	Property category {subsection name}	Global variable (GV) or set statement (SS)
TransferBatch	<i>integer</i>	{Transfer}	GV and SS
TransferErrorCount	<i>integer</i>	{Transfer}	GV and SS
Version	<i>versionstring</i>	{Client Interaction}	GV

## Code set reference tables

This section contains code set identifiers that are used with two configuration properties:

- DefaultClientCodeset
- DefaultTargetCodeset

For a complete list of the code sets that can be used, see the *Unilib® Reference Manual Developer's Kit for Unicode*.

## Values for DefaultClientCodeset

The following table shows code set values that you can use with the DefaultClientCodeset configuration property.

**Table A-2: Values for DefaultClientCodeset configuration property**

Code set identifier	Description
9	EUC-CNS encoding
10	EUC-GB encoding
11	Microsoft CP932
12	ISO 8859-2 Latin-2 Eastern Europe
13	ISO-885905 Latin/Cyrillic
14	ISO 8859-6 Latin/Arabic
15	ISO 8859-7 Latin/Greek
16	ISO 8859-8 Latin/Hebrew
17	ISO 8859-9 Latin-5 Turkish
26	Macintosh Cyrillic
27	Macintosh Eastern Europe

Code set identifier	Description
28	Macintosh Greek
29	Macintosh Turkish
30	HP Greek
31	HP Turkish
32	KOI8 - Cyrillic
33	Thai Standard
420	Arabic Bilingual
437	U. S. code page
819	ISO 8859-1 Latin
850	European code page
852	PC Eastern European
855	PC Cyrillic
857	PC Turkish
860	PC Portuguese
861	Icelandic
863	PC Canadian French code page
864	PC Arabic
866	PC Russian
869	PC Greek
874	Microsoft Thai SB code page
932	Japanese IBM J-DBCS
949	PC MS Korean
950	PC MS Traditional Chinese
954	EUCJIS
1250	MS Windows East Europe
1251	MS Windows Cyrillic
1252	MS Windows US
1253	MS Windows Greek
1254	MS Windows Turkish
1255	MS Windows Hebrew
1256	MS Windows Arabic
1257	MS Windows Baltic
1258	MS Windows Vietnamese
<i>deckanji</i>	Digital UNIX JIS encoding
<i>eucjis</i>	EUC-JIS encoding
<i>mac</i>	Standard Macintosh Roman

Code set identifier	Description
<i>roman8</i>	HP Roman8
<i>sjis</i>	Shift-JIS proper

## Values for DefaultTargetCodeset

The following table shows all values that you can use with the DefaultTargetCodeset configuration property.

**Table A-3: Values for DefaultTargetCodeset configuration property**

Code set identifier	Description (alternate identifier)
37	IBM EBCDIC code page
273	IBM EBCDIC Germany/Austria code page
277	IBM EBCDIC Denmark/Norway code page
278	IBM EBCDIC Finland/Sweden code page
280	IBM EBCDIC Italian code
284	IBM EBCDIC Spain/Latin America code page
285	IBM EBCDIC U.K. code page
297	IBM EBCDIC France code page
420	Arabic Bilingual
500	Western Europe code page
870	Eastern Europe
874	Microsoft Thai SB code page
875	Greek code page
933	MBCS Korean
- 833	- SBCS
- 834	- DBCS
935	MBCS Simplified Chinese
- 836	- SBCS
- 837	- DBCS
936	PC Simplified Chinese
937	MBCS Traditional Chinese
- 37	- SBCS
- 835	- DBCS
1047	MVS Open Edition

<b>Code set identifier</b>	<b>Description (alternate identifier)</b>
<i>5026</i>	MBCS IBM Kanji (Katakana)
- <i>290</i>	- SBCS
- <i>4396</i>	- DBCS
<i>5035</i>	MBCS IBM Kanji (Latin)
- <i>1027</i>	- SBCS
- <i>4396</i>	- DBCS
<i>cxgwebc</i>	MDI Gateway-compatible
<i>cxpsebc</i>	PeopleSoft Custom



# Compatibility with MDI Database Gateways and Net-Gateway

This appendix provides information regarding the compatibility between DirectConnect and both the MDI Database Gateways and Net\_Gateway.

This appendix contains the following topics:

Topic	Page
Compatibility with MDI Database Gateways	263
Compatibility with Net-Gateway	263

## Compatibility with MDI Database Gateways

If you have client applications for MDI Database Gateways, you can still use those applications with DB2 UDB access services.

## Compatibility with Net-Gateway

If you have client applications for Net-Gateway, those applications will work with TRS. Simply follow the file-moving instructions in the next subsection.

**Table B-1: Moving Net-Gateway files to TRS files**

<b>Move Net-Gateway files</b>	<b>To these TRS files</b>
For UNIX: \$SYBASE/ngcid.<msg_server_name>	\$SYBASE/\$SYBASE_ECON (UNIX) or %SYBASE_ECON% (NT) /servername/cfg/ngcid. <trs_service_library_name>
For TCP/IP on non-UNIX: %SYBASE%\ngcid.<msg_server_name>	%SYBASE%\\$SYBASE_ECON (UNIX) or %SYBASE_ECON% (NT) \servername\cfg\<trs>.ngcid
For LU 6.2 on non-UNIX: %SYBASE%\<msg_server_name>.cid	%SYBASE%\\$SYBASE_ECON (UNIX) or %SYBASE_ECON% (NT) \servername\cfg\<trs>.cid
For UNIX: \$SYBASE/ngreg.<msg_server_name>	\$SYBASE/\$SYBASE_ECON (UNIX) or %SYBASE_ECON% (NT) /servername/cfg/ngreg.<trs_service_library_name>
For TCP/IP on non-UNIX: %SYBASE%\ngreg.<msg_server_name>	%SYBASE%\\$SYBASE_ECON (UNIX) or %SYBASE_ECON% (NT) \servername\cfg\<trs>.ngreg
For LU 6.2 on non-UNIX: %SYBASE%\<msg_server_name>.reg	%SYBASE%\\$SYBASE_ECON (UNIX) or %SYBASE_ECON% (NT) \servername\cfg\<trs>.reg
For UNIX: \$SYBASE/nggrp.<msg_server_name>	\$SYBASE/\$SYBASE_ECON (UNIX) or %SYBASE_ECON% (NT) /servername/cfg/nggrp.<trs_service_library_name>
For TCP/IP on non-UNIX: %SYBASE%\nggrp.<msg_server_name>	%SYBASE%\\$SYBASE_ECON (UNIX) or %SYBASE_ECON% (NT) \servername\cfg\<trs>.nggrp
For LU 6.2 on non-UNIX: %SYBASE%\<msg_server_name>.grp	%SYBASE%\\$SYBASE_ECON (UNIX) or %SYBASE_ECON% (NT) \servername\cfg\<trs>.grp



Move Net-Gateway files	To these TRS files
For UNIX: \$SYBASE/ngrpc.<msg_server_name>	\$SYBASE/\$SYBASE_ECON (UNIX) or %SYBASE_ECON% (NT) /<servername>/cfg/ngrpc.<trs_service_library_name>
For TCP/IP on non-UNIX: %SYBASE%\ngrpc.<msg_server_name>	%SYBASE%\\$SYBASE_ECON (UNIX) or %SYBASE_ECON% (NT) \\servername\cfg\<trs>.ngrpc
For LU 6.2 on non-UNIX: %SYBASE%\<msg_server_name>.rpc	%SYBASE%\\$SYBASE_ECON (UNIX) or %SYBASE_ECON% (NT) \\servername\cfg\<trs>.rpc
For UNIX: \$SYBASE/ngact.<msg_server_name>	\$SYBASE/\$SYBASE_ECON (UNIX) or %SYBASE_ECON% (NT) /<servername>/log/ngact.<trs_service_library_name>
For TCP/IP on non-UNIX: %SYBASE%\ngact.<msg_server_name>	%SYBASE%\\$SYBASE_ECON (UNIX) or %SYBASE_ECON% (NT) \\servername\cfg\<trs>.ngact
For LU 6.2 on non-UNIX: %SYBASE%\<msg_server_name>.act	%SYBASE%\\$SYBASE_ECON (UNIX) or %SYBASE_ECON% (NT)\$SYBASE_ECON (UNIX) or %SYBASE_ECON% (NT) \\servername\cfg\<trs>.act
For UNIX: \$SYBASE/ngtds.<msg_server_name>	\$SYBASE/\$SYBASE_ECON (UNIX) or %SYBASE_ECON% (NT) /<servername>/log/ngtds.<trs_service_library_name>
For TCP/IP on non-UNIX: %SYBASE%\ngtds.<msg_server_name>	%SYBASE%\\$SYBASE_ECON (UNIX) or %SYBASE_ECON% (NT) \\servername\cfg\<trs>.ngtds
For LU 6.2 on non-UNIX: %SYBASE%\<msg_server_name>.tds	%SYBASE%\\$SYBASE_ECON (UNIX) or %SYBASE_ECON% (NT) \\servername\cfg\<trs>.tds

Move Net-Gateway files	To these TRS files
For UNIX: \$SYBASE/nglog.<msg_server_name>	\$SYBASE/\$SYBASE_ECON (UNIX) or %SYBASE_ECON% (NT) /servername/log/ servername.log
For TCP/IP on non-UNIX: %SYBASE%\nglog.<msg_server_name>	%SYBASE%\\$SYBASE_ECON (UNIX) or %SYBASE_ECON% (NT) \servername\log\ <dcon_server_name>.log
For LU 6.2 on non-UNIX: %SYBASE%\<msg_server_name>.log	%SYBASE%\\$SYBASE_ECON (UNIX) or %SYBASE_ECON% (NT) \servername\log\ <dcon_server_name>.log

# Glossary

<b>access management</b>	A DirectConnect feature that provides connectivity to non-Sybase targets.
<b>active log</b>	The part of the target database log in which records are written as they are generated. The active log always contains the most recent log records; whereas, the archive log holds those records that are older and no longer fit on the active log.
<b>Administrative Service Library</b>	A service library that provides remote management capabilities and server-side support. It supports a number of remote procedures (invoked as RPC requests) that enable remote DirectConnect management. See also <b>RPC, service library</b> .
<b>advanced program-to-program communication (APPC)</b>	Hardware and software that characterize the LU 6.2 architecture and its various implementations in products. See also <b>LU 6.2</b> .
<b>American Standard Code for Information Interchange (ASCII)</b>	A seven bit standard code that permits transmittal of text, numbers, and some special characters among systems.
<b>ANSI integrity constraint mechanism</b>	A series of constraint clauses defined by the ANSI standard that enforce data integrity by restricting the data that users can insert into a table.
<b>application program interface (API)</b>	A functional interface, supplied by an operating system or other licensed program, that allows an application program written in a high-level language to use specific data or functions of the operating system or the licensed program.
<b>application programmer</b>	A person who writes client application programs, such as CT-Library or DB-Library application programs.
<b>ASE/CIS</b>	Adaptive Server Enterprise / Component Integration Services (formerly OmniConnect). A variation of Sybase SQL Server that provides a Transact-SQL interface to various sources of external data, including host data files and tables in other database systems. The name replaces the names “OmniSQL Gateway” and “OmniSQL Server.”
<b>buffer</b>	A portion of storage used to hold input or output data temporarily.
<b>built-in functions</b>	Functions that are supplied by a language.

<b>bulk copy transfer</b>	A transfer method in which multiple rows of data are inserted into a table in the target database. See also <b>transfer</b> . Compare with <b>destination-template transfer</b> .
<b>call level interface (CLI)</b>	A programming style that calls database functions directly from the top level of the code; usually contrasted with embedded SQL. See also <b>dynamic SQL</b> and <b>embedded SQL</b> .
<b>catalog</b>	A system table that contains information about objects in a database, such as tables, views, columns, and authorizations.
<b>catalog stored procedure (CSP)</b>	A procedure that provides information about tables, columns, and authorizations. It is used in SQL generation and application development.
<b>character set</b>	A set of specific (usually standardized) characters with an encoding scheme that uniquely defines each character. ASCII is a common character set.
<b>client</b>	In client/server systems, the part of the system that sends requests to servers and processes the results of those requests. See also <b>client/server</b> . Compare with <b>server</b> .
<b>client application</b>	Software that is responsible for the user interface, including menus, data entry screens, and report formats. See also <b>client/server</b> .
<b>Client-Library (CT-Library or CT-LIB)</b>	A Sybase API that allows a client application to interact with Open Server applications.
<b>client/server</b>	An architecture in which the client is an application that handles the user interface and local data manipulation functions, while the server provides data access and management for multiple clients. See also <b>client application</b> .
<b>Client Services Application (CSA)</b>	A user-written CICS program, initiated on the host, that uses the Client Services for CICS API to invoke MainframeConnect for DB2 UDB as a client to DirectConnect or to Adaptive Server. Compare with <b>Remote Stored Procedures (RSPs)</b> .
<b>clustered index</b>	An index in which the physical order and the logical (indexed) order is the same. The leaf level of a clustered index represents the data pages themselves. Compare with <b>non-clustered index</b> .
<b>Coded Character Set Identifier (CCSID)</b>	A number that uniquely identifies a specific set of encoding scheme identifier, character set identifier(s), code page identifier(s), and additional coding-related required information.
<b>code set</b>	See <b>character set</b> .

<b>commit</b>	An instruction to a database to make permanent all changes made to one or more database files since the last commit or rollback operation, and to make the changed records available to other users. Compare with <b>rollback</b> .
<b>commitment control</b>	A means of grouping file operations that allows a group of database changes to be processed as a single unit, or the removal of a group of database changes as a single unit. See also <b>commit</b> , <b>rollback</b> .
<b>configuration set</b>	A section into which service library configuration files are divided.
<b>connection specification</b>	Information required to make an Open ClientConnect or Open ServerConnect connection. The connection specification consists of the server name, platform, Net-Library driver name, and address information required by the Net-Library driver being used.
<b>conversation</b>	<p>A dialog between a user and an interactive data processing system.</p> <p>Within the context of APPC, an exchange of information or a sequence of messages sent between two transaction programs. Conversations take place between two LUs over an established session. Also, a sequence of messages sent between two applications (for example, client application and SQL Server).</p>
<b>conversion</b>	In programming languages, the transformation between values that represent the same data item but belong to different datatypes. Information can be lost due to conversion because accuracy of data representation varies among different data types. See <b>character set conversion</b> .
<b>Customer Information Control System (CICS)</b>	An IBM-licensed program that enables transactions entered at remote terminals to be processed concurrently by user-written application programs. It includes facilities for building, using, and maintaining databases.
<b>database management system (DBMS)</b>	A computer-based system for defining, creating, manipulating, controlling, managing, and using databases. The software for using a database can be part of the database management system, or it can be a stand-alone database system. Compare with <b>relational database management system (RDBMS)</b> .
<b>Database 2 (DB2)</b>	An IBM relational database management system.
<b>data definition language (DDL)</b>	A language for describing data and their relationships in a database.
<b>datatype</b>	A keyword that identifies the characteristics of stored information on a computer. Some common datatypes are char (character), int (integer), smallint (small integer), date, time, numeric, and float. Different databases support different datatypes.

<b>DB-Library (DB-LIB)</b>	A Sybase and Microsoft API that allows client applications to interact with ODS applications. See also <b>application program interface (API)</b> .
<b>DB2 access service</b>	The named set of properties, used with an DB2 access service library, to which clients connect. Each DirectConnect server can have multiple services.
<b>DB2 Access Service Library</b>	A service library that provides access to non-Sybase data contained in a database management system or other type of repository. Each such repository is called a “target.” Each DB2 access service library interacts with exactly one target and is named accordingly. See also <b>service library</b> .
<b>DB2-SQL</b>	IBM SAA (Systems Application Architecture) embedded SQL. The ANSI SQL-1-compliant SQL syntax used by DB2 UDB.
<b>destination-template transfer</b>	A transfer method in which source data is briefly put into a template where the user can specify that some action be performed on it before execution against a target database. See also <b>transfer</b> and <b>dynamic SQL</b> . Compare with <b>bulk copy transfer</b> .
<b>DirectConnect</b>	A Sybase Open Server application that provides access management for non-Sybase database copy management (transfer) and remote systems management. Each DirectConnect consists of a server and one or more service libraries and provides access to a specific data source. DirectConnect replaces the “MDI Database Gateway” and “OmniSQL Access Module” names and products. Compare with <b>Enterprise Connect</b> .
<b>DirectConnect Manager</b>	A Sybase Windows application that provides remote management capabilities for DirectConnect products. These capabilities include starting, stopping, creating, and copying services.
<b>DirectConnect for DB2 UDB</b>	A Sybase LAN-based solution that communicates with DB2 UDB mainframe host components. It incorporates the functionality of the MDI Database Gateway and the Sybase Net-Library, and includes LU 6.2 and TCP/IP support.
<b>DirectConnect server</b>	The component that provides general management and support functions (such as log file management) to service libraries.
<b>DirectConnect DB2 access service</b>	The named set of properties, used with a DirectConnect DB2 Access Service Library, to which clients connect.
<b>DirectConnect Access Service Library</b>	The component that provides a set of functions within the DirectConnect server environment.

<b>direct resolution</b>	A type of service name resolution that relies on a client application to specify the exact name of the service to be used. For direct resolution to work, a service must be defined for each expected service name, and the names must match exactly. See also <b>service name resolution</b> . Compare with <b>service name redirection</b> .
<b>double-byte character set (DBCS)</b>	A set of characters in which each character is represented by 2 bytes. Languages such as Japanese, Chinese, and Korean, which contain more symbols than can be represented by 256 code points, require double-byte character sets. Because each character requires 2 bytes, the typing, display, and printing of DBCS characters requires hardware and programs that support DBCS. Compare with <b>single-byte character set (SBCS)</b> .
<b>dynamic link library (DLL)</b>	A file containing executable code and data bound to a program at load time or run time, rather than during linking. The code and data in a dynamic link library can be shared by several applications simultaneously.
<b>dynamic SQL</b>	Pertaining to the preparation and processing of SQL source statements within a program while the program runs. The SQL source statements are contained in host-language variables rather than being coded directly into the application program. The SQL statement can change several times while the program runs. Compare with <b>static SQL</b> . Compare with <b>destination-template transfer</b> .
<b>embedded SQL (ESQL)</b>	A SQL statement embedded within a source program and prepared before the program executes. After it is prepared, the statement itself does not change, although values of host variables specified within the statement can change.
<b>Enterprise Connect</b>	The encompassing architecture upon which Sybase implements heterogeneous data integration. Compare with <b>DirectConnect</b> .
<b>Extended Binary-Coded Decimal Interchange Code (EBCDIC)</b>	A coded character set of 256 eight-bit characters. An eight-bit standard character code set used by IBM mainframe computers.
<b>event handler</b>	A device that processes requests and manages client communication.
<b>event type</b>	A category of event, such as language, cursor, or dynamic.
<b>front-end applications</b>	Software that initiates requests. The client end of a client/server system is sometimes considered “front-end” software, whereas software on the server is considered “back-end” software. See also <b>DirectConnect server</b> .
<b>global variable</b>	System-defined variables that DirectConnect or the client application updates on an ongoing basis. For example, @@error contains the last error number generated by the system.

<b>host-request library</b>	A special DB2 table in which host-resident SQL statements are stored. These requests can be executed dynamically. See also <b>host-resident request</b> .
<b>host-resident request</b>	A SQL request that resides on MainframeConnect for DB2 in the host request library. An end user or client application executes a host-resident request from a PC by using a command that includes the name of an existing host-resident request. See also <b>host request library</b> .
<b>interfaces file</b>	An operating system file that must be available on each machine from which connections to DirectConnect or other Sybase products are made. Each entry in the file determines how the host client software connects to a Sybase product. An interfaces file entry contains the name of any DirectConnect server and a list of services provided by that server.
<b>keyword</b>	A word or phrase that is reserved for exclusive use by Transact-SQL. Also known as a reserved word.
<b>logical unit (LU)</b>	A type of network-accessible unit that enables end users to gain access to network resources and communicate with each other. See also <b>end user</b> .
<b>logical unit 6.2 (LU6.2)</b>	A type of logical unit that supports general communication between programs in a distributed processing environment. See also <b>APPC</b> .
<b>Mainframe Access Product (MAP)</b>	Sybase products that enable desktop computer users to communicate with mainframes in a client/server environment.
<b>MDI Database Gateway</b>	An MDI legacy product that gives client applications access to supported data sources, such as DB2.
<b>MVS (Multiple Virtual Storage)</b>	An IBM operating system that runs on most System/370 and System/390 mainframes. It supports 24-bit addressing up to 16 megabytes.
<b>Net-Gateway</b>	A Sybase product that provides communication between the mainframe and the LAN server.
<b>Net-Library (Net-Lib)</b>	A Sybase product that lets PC applications become clients of SQL Server or Open Server. See also <b>client</b> , <b>Open Server</b> , <b>SQL Server</b> .
<b>network protocol</b>	A set of rules governing the way computers communicate on a network.
<b>non-clustered index</b>	An index that stores key values and pointers to data. The leaf level points to data pages rather than containing the data itself. Compare with <b>clustered index</b> .
<b>null</b>	Not having an explicitly assigned value.



<b>OmniConnect</b>	Functionality incorporated into CIS of Adaptive Server is referred to as ASE/CIS. See <b>ASE/CIS</b> .
<b>Open Client</b>	A Sybase product that provides customer applications, third-party products, and other Sybase products with the interfaces required to communicate with Open Server and Open Server applications.
<b>Open Client application</b>	An application written using Open Client libraries.
<b>Open ClientConnect</b>	A Sybase product that provides capability for the mainframe to act as a client to LAN-based resources.
<b>Open Database Connectivity (ODBC)</b>	A Microsoft API that allows access to both relational and non-relational databases. ODBC allows client application developers to produce vendor-neutral Windows applications that can access data sources without including code for a specific database. See also <b>application program interface (API)</b> .
<b>Open Server</b>	A Sybase and Microsoft product that provides the tools and interfaces required to create a custom server.
<b>Open Server application</b>	A custom server application built with Sybase Open Server.
<b>Open ServerConnect</b>	A Sybase product that provides capability for programmatic access to mainframe data.
<b>Partner Logical Units (PLU)</b>	The LU on the remote machine in a conversation. See also <b>LU</b> and <b>conversation</b> .
<b>precision</b>	A positive integer that determines the maximum number of digits that can be represented in a decimal, numeric, or float column.
<b>precision minus scale</b>	Scale is the number of digits to the right of the decimal; precision is the total number of digits. Precision minus scale is the number of digits to the left of the decimal. For example, using the number 123.45, scale is 2, precision is 5, and precision minus scale is 3.
<b>primary database</b>	In transfer processing, the database accessed by the DB2 access service. For example, for DirectConnect for OS/390, the primary database is DB2. Compare with <b>secondary database</b> .
<b>property</b>	A setting for a server or service that defines the characteristics of the service, such as how events are logged or how datatypes are converted. Compare with <b>parameter</b> and <b>value</b> .

<b>protocol</b>	A set of rules that governs the behavior of the computers communicating on a network.
<b>registry</b>	The part of the Windows NT operating system that holds configuration information for a particular machine.
<b>relational operators (relops)</b>	Operators supported in search conditions. Examples are: =, <>, <, >, <=, >=, and LIKE.
<b>remote procedure call (RPC)</b>	A stored procedure executed on a different server from the one onto which a user is logged.
<b>remote stored procedure (RSP)</b>	A customer-written CICS program that resides on the mainframe and communicates with MainframeConnect for DB2 UDB. See also <b>CICS</b> , <b>stored procedures</b> .
<b>remote systems management</b>	A feature that allows a Systems Administrator to manage multiple DirectConnect servers and multiple services from a client. See <b>DirectConnect Manager</b> .
<b>request</b>	One or more database operations the application sends as one unit to the database. During a request, the application gives up control to the DBMS and waits for its response. Depending on the response, the application commits or rolls back the request. One or more requests can be grouped into a single unit of work. See also <b>commit</b> , <b>rollback</b> , <b>unit of work</b> .
<b>rollback</b>	An instruction to a database to not implement the changes requested in a unit of work and to return to the pre-transaction state. Compare with <b>commit</b> . See also <b>transaction</b> and <b>unit of work</b> .
<b>scale</b>	The maximum number of digits that can be stored to the right of the decimal point by a numeric or decimal datatype. The scale must be less than or equal to the precision.
<b>secondary connection</b>	The connection specified in the transfer statement. It represents anything that can be accessed using Open Client Connect, such as Adaptive Server or another DB2 access service.
<b>secondary database</b>	When performing transfers, one of the following: the Adaptive Server, another DirectConnect service, an MDI Database Gateway, or another supported database that is specified in the transfer statement. Compare with <b>primary database</b> .
<b>server</b>	A functional unit that provides shared services to clients over a network. Compare with <b>client</b> . See also <b>client/server</b> .

<b>server process ID (SPID)</b>	A positive integer that uniquely identifies a client connection to the server. In Open Server, SPID is a thread ID. Each connection has its own thread. A client can have multiple connections to the server, each with its own SPID.
<b>service</b>	A functionality available to DirectConnect applications. It is essentially the pairing of a service library and a set of specific configuration properties.
<b>service library</b>	For DirectConnect, a set of configuration properties that determine service functionality. Examples of service libraries include DB2 access service libraries, transfer service libraries, administrative service libraries, and transaction router service libraries. See also <b>DB2 Access Service Library</b> , <b>Administrative Service Library</b> , <b>Transaction Router Service Library</b> .
<b>service manager</b>	The server for DirectConnect. It provides the infrastructure for service libraries, such as logging, tracing, message handling, and configuration management.
<b>service name redirection</b>	A file for service name resolution that allows a Systems Administrator to create an alternative mechanism to map connections with services. See also <b>service name resolution</b> . Compare with <b>direct resolution</b> .
<b>service name redirection file (SNRF)</b>	A type of service name resolution that allows a Systems Administrator to create an alternative mechanism to map connections with services. See also <b>service name resolution</b> . Compare with <b>direct resolution</b> .
<b>service name resolution</b>	The mapping by the DirectConnect server of an incoming service name to an actual service. See also <b>direct resolution</b> , <b>service name redirection</b> .
<b>single-byte character set (SBCS)</b>	A character set in which each character is represented by a one byte code. Compare with <b>double-byte character set (DBCS)</b> .
<b>structured query language (SQL)</b>	An IBM industry-standard language for processing data in a relational database.
<b>SQL descriptor area (SQLDA)</b>	A set of variables that are used in the processing of certain SQL statements. The SQLDA is intended for dynamic SQL programs.
<b>sqledit</b>	A utility for creating and editing <i>sql.ini</i> files and file entries.
<b>sql.ini</b>	The interfaces file containing definitions for each DirectConnect server to which a workstation can connect. The file must be on every client machine that connects to SQL Servers.

<b>SQL Server</b>	The server in the Sybase Client-Server architecture. It manages multiple databases and multiple users, tracks the actual location of data on disks, maintains mapping of logical data description to physical data storage, and maintains data and procedure caches in memory.
<b>statement</b>	Basic unit of SQL, a single SQL operation, such as select, update, or delete.
<b>static SQL</b>	SQL statements that are embedded within a program and are prepared during the program preparation process before the program runs. After being prepared, the statement itself does not change, although values of host variables specified by the statement can change. Compare with <b>call level interface</b> and <b>dynamic SQL</b> .
<b>stored procedures</b>	A collection of SQL statements and optional control-of-flow statements stored under a particular name. Sybase Adaptive Server stored procedures are called “system procedures.” See also <b>remote stored procedure</b> , <b>system procedures</b> , <b>host-resident requests</b> and <b>catalog stored procedures</b> .
<b>subsystem</b>	A secondary or subordinate system, usually capable of operating independently of, or asynchronously with, a controlling system.
<b>syntax</b>	Rules for how to construct a statement.
<b>system administrator</b>	The user in charge of server system administration. For DirectConnect, the user responsible for installing and maintaining servers and service libraries.
<b>system management</b>	The tasks involved in maintaining the system in good working order and modifying the system to meet changing requirements.
<b>system procedures</b>	Stored procedures that Sybase supplies with Adaptive Server for use in system administration. These procedures serve as shortcuts for retrieving information from the system tables, or mechanisms for accomplishing database administration and other tasks that involve updating system tables. See also <b>stored procedures</b> .
<b>system table</b>	The system tables keep track of information about the database as a whole.
<b>table</b>	An array of data or a named data object that contains a specific number of unordered rows. Each item in a row can be unambiguously identified by means of one or more arguments.
<b>Tabular Data Stream (TDS)</b>	An application-level protocol that Sybase clients and servers use to communicate. It describes commands and results.
<b>target</b>	A system, program, or device that interprets, rejects or satisfies, and replies to requests received from a source.

<b>target database</b>	The database to which DirectConnect transfers data or performs operations on specific data.
<b>trace</b>	The process of recording the sequence in which the statements in a program execute and, optionally, the values of the program variables that the statements contain.
<b>transaction</b>	An exchange between a program on a local system and a program on a remote system that accomplishes a particular action or result.
<b>transaction program (TP)</b>	<p>A program that processes transactions. There are two kinds of transaction programs: application transaction programs and service transaction programs.</p> <p>In VTAM, a program that performs services related to the processing of a transaction. One or more transaction programs can operate within a VTAM application program that is using the VTAM application program interface (API). In that situation, the transaction program would request services from the application program using protocols defined by that application program. The application program, in turn, could request services from the VTAM program by issuing the APPCCMD macroinstruction.</p>
<b>transaction program name</b>	The name used to identify the program to start on the partner computer. See also <b>transaction program</b> .
<b>Transaction Router Service Library</b>	A DirectConnect service library that facilitates access to remote transactions, allowing customers to execute thousands of transactions from virtually any mainframe data source. See also <b>service library</b> .
<b>Transact-SQL (T-SQL)</b>	A Sybase-enhanced version of the SQL database language used to communicate with SQL Server. Enhancements include data integrity features and stored procedures.
<b>transfer</b>	A DirectConnect feature used to move data or copies of data from one database to another. See also <b>bulk copy transfer</b> , <b>destination-template transfer</b> .
<b>trigger</b>	A special form of a stored procedure that automatically executes when a user issues a change statement, such as insert, delete, or update, to a specified table that meets the triggering condition.
<b>unit of work</b>	One or more database operations grouped under one commit or rollback. A unit of work ends when an application commits or rolls back a series of requests, or when the application terminates. See also <b>commit</b> , <b>rollback</b> , and <b>transaction</b> .
<b>value</b>	A quantity assigned to a constant, a variable, a parameter, or a symbol. See also <b>variable</b> .

<b>variable</b>	An entity that is assigned a value.
<b>view</b>	In SQL, an alternative representation of data from one or more tables. A view can include all or some of the columns contained in the table or tables on which it is defined.
<b>wildcard</b>	Special character that represents a range of characters in a search pattern. For example, the percent sign (%) represents any string of zero or more characters.

# Index

## Symbols

- % (percent sign) as a wildcard character 210
- (double quotes)
  - with parameter values 208
- . (period) as decimal delimiter 33, 62
- @ (at symbol)
  - for named parameters 209
  - for escape character 210
- @@ (at symbols) in global variables 70
- @@Quoted\_Identifier global variable 73
- ' (single quote)
  - as quoted string delimiter 60

## A

- accessing
  - a database using use 150
  - database objects using grant 139
- Adaptive Server
  - authorization using create procedure 180
  - tempdb database 180
- adding
  - a row to a table or view using insert language command 142
  - a row to view or table using insert dynamic command 141
  - an index to a table using create index 131
  - columns to a table using alter table 129
- Administrative Service Library 4
- aggregate
  - functions 147
  - handling 211, 240
- aliases in CSP results 28
- Allocate configuration property 59, 95
  - use with dynamic commands 114
- @@Allocate global variable 72
- @@AllResults global variable 76
- alter table command 129

- datatype names 87
- AMD2 62, 248, 251
- AND predicates 211, 240
- ANSI SQL-1 standard 107
- API calls 91
- API used by Open ClientConnect 8
- APPCSecurity configuration property 59
- ApplicationValidationFile configuration property 32
- arguments
  - for remote stored procedures 247
  - for transfer commands 157
- AS/400 database
  - as a transfer target 166
- ASE/CIS
  - as transfer target 166
- assigning user authorizations using the grant command 139
- at symbol (@)
  - for escape character 210
  - for named parameters 209
- at symbol (@@) in global variables 70
- authorizations
  - for transfer to SQL Server 180
  - granting to create database objects 139
  - removing with table definition from the database 138
  - revoking 143
  - role\_name 140
- autoconvert value 47
- avg aggregate function 147

## B

- backward compatibility
  - GatewayCompatible configuration property 34
  - syntax for executing SQL Server stored procedures 154
  - TSQL0 and passthrough mode 110
- BCD (Binary Coded Decimal) 48

- begin transaction command 130
    - long transactions 94
    - short transactions 93
  - Binary Coded Decimal (BCD) 48
  - binary datatypes 183
    - errors 188
  - BinaryResults configuration property 45
  - @@BinaryResults global variable 74
  - bulk copy transfer
    - conversion errors 181
    - data datatype errors 188
    - data value errors 183
    - examples 173, 175
    - from decimal to float 183
    - general description 161, 171
    - incompatible columns 168
    - processing sequence 180
    - rules and restrictions 171
    - syntax for statements 172
    - target table structure 172
    - targets 172
    - transfer from statements 175, 177
    - transfer to statements 177, 180
    - truncate option 173
  - bulk insert handling 211, 240
  - BulkCommitCount configuration property 65, 165
  - @@BulkCommitCount global variable 76
  - byte limits
    - dynamic commands 115
    - SQL statement request 119
- ## C
- call option 143
  - capabilities
    - cursor commands 118
    - dynamic commands 114
  - cascade option 144
  - CASE support 213, 241
  - catalog qualifier 27
  - catalog stored procedures 205, 238
    - coding 208, 210
    - coding examples 208
    - CSP parameters and DB2 209
    - escape character 210
    - overview 205
    - parameters 208
    - sp\_column\_privileges 213
    - sp\_columns 215
    - sp\_databases 218
    - sp\_datatype\_info 219
    - sp\_fkeys 222
    - sp\_pkeys 224
    - sp\_server\_info 225
    - sp\_special\_columns 226
    - sp\_statistics 230
    - sp\_stored\_procedures 233
    - sp\_table\_privileges 234
    - sp\_tables 236
    - supported CSPs 207
    - syntax 208
    - table\_name parameter 209
    - table\_owner parameter 209
    - table\_qualifier parameter 209
    - wildcards 210
  - changing
    - data in rows using update cursor command 148
    - data in rows using update dynamic command 148
    - data in rows using update language command 149
    - transformation mode 111
  - CHAR FOR BIT DATA datatype conversion 45
  - character datatype errors 184
  - character truncation 212, 241
  - CharConvertError configuration property 41
    - during datatype conversion failure 167
    - in transfer processing 169
  - @@CharConvertError global variable 75
  - CICS region name 24
  - CICS SIT table property 244
  - CICS transaction program 26
  - client connections
    - effect of transformation mode 108
  - Client Services Application (CSA)
    - use with Open ClientConnect 8
  - ClientDecimalSeparator configuration property 33
  - @@ClientDecimalSeparator global variable 72
  - ClientIdleTimeout configuration property 33
  - client-side cursors 118
  - close on entran statement
    - in cursor commands 119
  - @@CloseOnEndtran global variable 76



- clustered components 132
- code samples
  - dynamic commands 115
  - read-only cursors 120
  - updatable cursors 124
- code set
  - client application code set 25
  - DefaultClientCodeset configuration property 25
  - DefaultTargetCodeset configuration property 26
  - in the login record 25
  - OpenServerDefault value 25
  - target code set 26
- Code set identifier values
  - DefaultClientCodeset configuration property 258
- columns
  - incompatible numbers in transfer processing 168
- command types 112, 126
  - cursor 117
  - language 112
- commit
  - in a read-only cursor command 119
  - long transactions 94
  - short transactions 94
  - with cursor commands 119
  - with dynamic commands 114
- committing transaction results
  - using commit transaction 131
- compatibility
  - See backward compatibility 34
  - databases 110
  - with MDI Database Gateway 34
- compile option 251
- configuration concepts 13, 20
  - access service names 16
  - changing property values 17
  - creating additional services 19
  - general information 13
- configuration file 14
  - format 15
  - sample configuration file 15
- configuration properties 20, 65
  - Allocate 59, 95
  - APPCSecurity 59
  - ApplicationValidationFile 32
  - BinaryResults 45
  - BulkCommitCount 65, 165
  - CharConvertError 41
  - ClientDecimalSeparator 33
  - ClientIdleTimeout 33
  - combined settings and transaction behavior 96
  - ConnectionProtocol 23
  - ConnectionSpec1 23
  - ConnectionSpec2 24
  - ConnectionSpec3 24
  - CSPCatalogQualifier 27
  - CSPDBName 28
  - CSPExclusions 28
  - CSPIncludeAlias 28
  - CSPIncludeSynonym 29
  - CSPIncludeSystem 29
  - CSPIncludeTable 29
  - CSPIncludeView 30
  - CSPQualByDBName 30
  - DatatypeInfo 30
  - DateResults 45
  - DateTimeConvertError 41
  - DateTimeResults 46
  - DecimalResults 47
  - DefaultClientCodeset 25
  - DefaultDate 42
  - DefaultNum 43
  - DefaultTargetCodeset 26
  - DefaultTime 43
  - EnableAtStartup 34
  - FloatResults 48
  - GatewayCompatible 34
  - GraphicResults 49
  - Int2Results 49
  - Int4Results 49
  - LogConnectionStatistics 54
  - LogReceivedSQL 54
  - LogRequestStatistics 55
  - LogServiceStatistics 55
  - LogSvcLibStatistics 52
  - LogTargetActivity 57
  - LogTransferStatistics 57
  - LogTransformedSQL 58
  - MaxResultSize 35
  - MaxRowsReturned 36
  - MaxSvcConnections 36
  - NumConvertError 43
  - PasswordRequired 60

- quoted\_identifier 37
- QuotedStringDelimiter 60
- RealResults 50
- see also quick reference 255
- SendWarningMessages 38
- ServiceDescription 39
- SQLInformationFile 31
- SQLTransformation 61
- StopCondition 61, 95
- TargetDebug 62
- TargetDecimalSeparator 62
- TargetHasMixedData 62
- TextSize 39
- TimeResults 50
- TPName 26
- TraceEvents 64
- TraceHostCom 64
- TraceInterface 64
- TraceTarget 65
- TransactionMode 40
- TransferBatch 67
- TransferErrorCount 67
- Version 40
- XNLChar 51
- XNLVarChar 51
- configuration property categories
  - catalog stored procedures 27, 31
  - client interaction 32, 40
  - data conversion error 41, 44
  - datatype conversion 44, 50
  - logging 51, 56, 58
  - required 21, 27
  - target interaction 58, 63
  - tracing 63, 65
  - transfer 65, 67
- configuring
  - SQL Server for remote access 153
- ConnectionProtocol configuration property 23
- connections
  - maximum 36
- @@Connections global variable 76
- ConnectionSpec1 configuration property 23
- ConnectionSpec2 configuration property 24
- ConnectionSpec3 configuration property 24
- control of logging options 105
- conversion errors
  - from numeric to output datatypes 187
  - in bulk copy transfer 181
- count aggregate function 147
- create index command 131
- create procedure command 250
  - authorization 180
- create request command 250
- create table command 132
  - datatype names 87
- create view command 134
- creating
  - a table using create table 132
  - a view using create view 134
  - database objects using grant 139
  - SQL Server stored procedure 152
- CS\_DATAFMT structure 85
- CS\_LONGBINARY parameter
  - in cursor commands 119
- CS\_LONGCHAR parameter
  - in cursor commands 119
- CSP
  - See Catalog stored procedures xii
  - See catalog stored procedures 205
- CSPCatalogQualifier configuration property 27
- @@CSPCatalogQualifier global variable 73
- CSPDBName configuration property 28
- @@CSPDBName global variable 73
- CSPEclusions configuration property 28
- @@CSPEclusions global variable 74
- CSPIncludeAlias configuration property 28
- @@CSPIncludeAlias global variable 74
- CSPIncludeSynonym configuration property 29
- @@CSPIncludeSynonym global variable 74
- CSPIncludeSystem configuration property 29
- @@CSPIncludeSystem global variable 74
- CSPIncludeTable configuration property 29
- @@CSPIncludeTable global variable 74
- CSPIncludeView configuration property 30
- @@CSPIncludeView global variable 74
- CSPQualByDBName configuration property 30
- @@CSPQualByDBName global variable 74
- ct\_cancel command
  - with cursor declare command 125
  - with cursor open command 126
- ct\_cursor command 117
- ct\_param function call 85

- CT-Library and DB-Library cursors
  - comparison 118
- CT-Library client API processing 92
- cursor commands 117, 126
  - capabilities and limitations 118
  - declare 110
  - delete 118
  - error handling for declare and open 124
  - example of read-only code 120
  - general description 117
  - language event-based 117
  - parameter markers 119
  - processing 117
  - processing multiple result sets 117
  - read-only 119, 120
  - select 145
  - support of fetch options 119
  - support of from clause 118
  - updatable 123, 124
  - update 148
  - with hold option 119
- cursors
  - access to Open Server applications 118
  - client-side 118
  - closing 120
  - comparison of DB-Lib and CT-Lib 117
  - emulated 118
  - examples 120, 124
  - fetch capability 118
  - fetch count in updatable 124
  - fetching 123
  - library row position 118
  - memory requirements 118
  - native 118
  - opening 120
  - read-only 120
  - relationship to SQL Server 118
  - result sets 117
  - server-side 118
  - support of from clause 118
  - updatable 123
- data flow
  - in a destination-template transfer from statement 202
  - in a transfer to statement 203
  - transfer between databases 163
- data transfer
  - definition of terms 162
  - direction 165
  - general description of process 161
- data value errors 183
- database objects
  - retrieving rows from 145
- datatype conversion 79, 88
  - binary to output datatypes 189
  - changing via set statements 79
  - character representations 80
  - character to output datatypes 185
  - client-specified 85
  - configuration properties 44, 50
  - data values embedded as strings 83
  - data values received as parameters 84
  - date to output datatypes 188
  - decimal results 47
  - FLOAT and REAL precision and ranges 82
  - for transfer from processing 175
  - for transfer to processing 177
  - group conversions 80
  - guidelines 182
  - in create table 134
  - numeric to output datatypes 187
  - Open Client/Server datatypes to target datatypes 83, 86
  - parameters related to graphic columns 86
  - single conversions 80
  - target datatypes to Open Client/Server datatypes 79
- datatype qualifiers
  - in destination-template 194
  - in transfer processing 167
- DatatypeInfo configuration property 30
- @@DatatypeInfo global variable 74
- datatypes
  - binary 183
  - binary errors 188
  - character errors 184
  - conversion errors from character to output 185

## D

data conversion errors 81

- date 183
- date errors 188
- generic 45
- numeric 187
- numeric errors 186
- Open Client/Server and SQL Server comparisons 88
- in sp\_datatype\_info results 30
- DATE datatype conversion 45
- date datatypes 183
  - errors during bulk copy transfer 188
- date functions 212, 241
- DateResults configuration property 45
- @@DateResults global variable 74
- DateTimeConvertError configuration property 41
  - in transfer processing 169
- @@DateTimeConvertError global variable 75
- DateTimeResults configuration property 46
- @@DateTimeResults global variable 74
- DB2 database
  - as a transfer target 166
  - authorization schemes 144
- db2 mode 61, 110
- DBC/1012
  - as a transfer target 166
- dcon keyword 155
- DECIMAL datatype conversion 47
- decimal delimiter 33, 62
- DecimalResults configuration property 47
- @@DecimalResults global variable 75
- declare cursor command
  - error handling 125
- DefaultClientCodeset code set identifier values 258
- DefaultClientCodeset configuration property 25
  - @@DefaultClientCodeset global variable 71
- DefaultDate configuration property 42
  - during datatype conversion failure 167
  - in transfer processing 169
- @@DefaultedRowCount global variable 77
  - in transfer processing 170
- DefaultNum configuration property 43
  - in transfer processing 169
- DefaultTargetCodeset configuration property 26
  - @@DefaultTargetCodeset global variable 72
- DefaultTime configuration property 43
  - in transfer processing 169
- defining
  - DirectConnect as a remote server 153
- definitions
  - special date and time qualifiers 197
  - transfer terms 162
- delete command
  - in cursor commands 117, 118
- delete cursor command 135
- delete dynamic command 136
- delete language command 136
- description of transfer terms 162
- destination database
  - description 163
- destination-template transfer 191, 203
  - datatype qualifiers 194
  - examples 198
  - general description 161, 191
  - incompatible columns 168
  - sequential steps in transfer from statement 200
  - sequential steps in transfer to statement 203
  - syntax for statements 192
  - transfer from statements 200
  - transfer to statements 202
  - using question marks as qualifiers 192
- destinationtemplatestatement 193
  - in transfer to statements 203
- DirectConnect
  - description 1
  - online transaction processing (OLTP) applications 1
- DirectConnect for OS/390 1
- DirectConnect Manager
  - description 5
- DirectConnect server
  - start up 34
- direction
  - of data transfer 165, 172
- distinct option 134, 150, 212, 241
- dollar signs
  - transformation in sybase mode 111
- drop index command 137
- drop procedure command 253
- drop request command 252
- drop table command 138
- drop view command 138
- dynamic commands 113
  - byte limit 115

- capabilities and limitations 114, 115
- delete command 136
- error handling 117
- example of code 115
- execute immediate 110
- execute immediate command 114
- general description 115
- insert command 141
- non-select statements 114
- number per client connection 114
- placeholders 113
- prepare 110
- qualifiers 113
- select statements 115
- SQL command example 113
- SQL statement execution 113
- update command 148
- using 115

## E

- embedded select statement 137
- embedded SQL (ESQL) 115
- emulated cursors 118
- EnableAtStartup configuration property 34
- @@Error global variable 77
- error handling
  - dynamic commands 117
  - for cursor declare and open 124
  - in transfer processing 167
- error reporting for transfer processing 169
- errors
  - controlling processing during transfer 170
  - during conversion in bulk copy transfer 181
  - during transfer processing 167
  - in converting binary datatypes during transfer 188
  - in converting character datatypes during transfer 183
  - in converting date datatypes during transfer 188
  - in converting numeric datatypes during transfer 186
  - in transfer processing 167, 170
  - incompatible columns in transfer from processing 176
  - structural 167
- events
  - initiating using RPCs 151, 159
- examples
  - alter table command 129
  - bulk copy transfer 162, 173
  - bulk copy transfer from statements 175
  - bulk copy transfer initiated by RPC 157
  - bulk copy transfer to statements 177
  - commit transaction command 131
  - configuring SQL Server for remote access 153
  - create index command 132
  - create procedure command 250
  - create request command 250
  - create table command 133
  - create view command 135
  - defining DirectConnect as a remote server 153
  - delete cursor command 135
  - delete language command 137
  - destination-template transfer 162, 192
  - destination-template transfer from statement 200
  - destination-template transfer statements 198
  - drop index command 137
  - drop procedure command 253
  - drop request command 252
  - drop table command 138
  - drop view command 138
  - dynamic SQL command 113
  - execute request command 251
  - executing a SQL Server stored procedure 154
  - executing a transfer SQL request 158
  - grant command 140
  - insert dynamic command 141
  - insert language command 142
  - language statement executed as an RPC 154
  - prepare transaction command 143
  - qualifiers in transfer to statements 202
  - revoke command 144
  - rollback transaction command 145
  - select command 146
  - selecting SQL Server rows and deleting
    - corresponding rows in a DB2 table 199
  - SQL stored procedure executing a remote stored procedure (RSP) 152
  - SQL stored procedure initiating transfer request 157

- transfer to statement appending data to a SQL Server table 202
- transferring data from SQL Server to DB2 174
- transferring data from SQL Server to the AS/400 174
- transferring data from two tables to one SQL Server table 174
- truncate table command 147
- update cursor command 148
- update dynamic command 149
- update language command 150
- updating a table with data from a similar SQL Server table 199
- use command 150
- use procedure command with RSPs 248
- use request command 251
- using quoted\_identifier 38
- variables in host-resident requests 252
- execute command
  - catalog stored procedures and system procedures 208
  - host-resident requests 251
  - in sybase mode 251
  - remote stored procedures 249
- execute immediate command
  - with dynamic commands 114
- executing
  - language statements as RPCs 154
  - transfer SQL request 158
- existing indexes on a table
  - finding information about 138
- explicit datatype conversion in destination-template transfer 162
- expression handling 212, 241

## F

- fetch capabilities 118
- fetch count
  - in read-only cursor commands 119
  - in updatable cursors 123
- fetch statements
  - in cursor commands 117
- FLOAT datatype conversion 48
- FloatResults configuration property 48
- @@FloatResults global variable 75
- for update of clause

- in updatable cursors 123
- from keyword 135

## G

- GatewayCompatible configuration property 34
- @@GatewayCompatible global variable 72
- general descriptions
  - bulk copy transfer 171
  - destination-template transfer 191
- generic datatypes 45
- global variables 69, 77
  - @@Allocate 72
  - @@AllResults 76
  - @@BinaryResults 74
  - @@BulkCommitCount 76
  - @@CharConvertError 75
  - @@ClientDecimalSeparator 72
  - @@CloseOnEndtran 76
  - @@Connections 76
  - @@CSPCatalogQualifier 73
  - @@CSPDBName 73
  - @@CSPEclusions 74
  - @@CSPIncludeAlias 74
  - @@CSPIncludeSynonym 74
  - @@CSPIncludeSystem 74
  - @@CSPIncludeTable 74
  - @@CSPIncludeView 74
  - @@CSPQualByDBName 74
  - @@DatatypeInfo 74
  - @@DateResults 74
  - @@DateTimeConvertError 75
  - @@DateTimeResults 74
  - @@DecimalResults 75
  - @@DefaultClientCodeset 71
  - @@DefaultedRowCount 77
  - @@DefaultTargetCodeset 72
  - @@Error 77
  - @@FloatResults 75
  - @@GatewayCompatible 72
  - @@GraphicResults 75
  - @@Int2Results 75
  - @@Int4Results 75
  - @@MainframeVersion 77
  - @@MaxResultSize 72

- @@MaxRowsReturned 73
- @@MaxSvcConnections 73
- @@noexec 77
- @@NumConvertError 75
- @@Quoted\_Identifier 73
- @@RealResults 75
- @@RejectedRowCount 77
- @@RowCount 77
- @@SendWarningMessages 73
- @@ServiceDescription 73
- @@ServiceName 77
- @@spid 77
- @@SQLTransformation 72
- @@StopCondition 72
- @@SvclibDescription 73
- @@TargetDebug 72
- @@TargetDecimalSeparator 72
- @@TargetError 77
- @@TextSize 73
- @@TimeResults 75
- @@TransactionMode 73
- @@TransferBatch 76
- @@TransferErrorCount 76
- @@Version 73
- SQL transformation mode 69
- syntax 70
- grant command 139
- grant option for option 144
- granting authorization to create and access database objects 139
- GRAPHIC datatype conversion 49
- GraphicResults configuration property 49
- @@GraphicResults global variable 75
- group by 211, 240
- group by option 146

## H

- hexadecimal data format 194
- host-resident requests 250, 253
  - creating 250, 251
  - deleting 252
  - examples of variables in 252
  - executing 251, 252
- how to

- get information about existing indexes on a table 138

## I

- idle connection 33
- IN/NOT IN support 213, 241
- incompatible columns
  - in transfer from processing 176
  - in transfer processing 168
  - in transfer to processing 179
- incompatible datatype errors
  - in bulk copy transfer 168
  - in destination-template transfer 168
- indexes
  - removing with table from the database 138
- insert command 141
  - with dynamic commands 115
- insert language command 142
- insert/select handling 213, 241
- Int2Results configuration property 49
- @@Int2Results global variable 75
- Int4Results configuration property 49
- @@Int4Results global variable 75
- INTEGER datatype conversion 49
- interaction
  - access service configuration properties and processing flow 92
- Intersystem Communication (ISC) setting 244
- IP address 23
- IRSDelay=0 244
- issuing remote procedure calls (RPCs) 151, 159
- issuing SQL statements 107, 126

## J

- join handling 211, 240

## K

- keywords
  - dcon 155
  - from 135

- null 168
- pcsql 155
- read-only 146
- syrt 155
- tran 145
- union 146
- unique 131
- values 141, 142
- work 145

## L

- language commands 110, 112
  - general description 112
  - insert 142
  - select 145
  - update 149
- language events 212, 241
  - long character string support 113
- language statements
  - executing as RPCs 154
  - rules for using as RPCs 156
- LIKE predicates 211, 240
- limitations
  - cursor commands 118
  - dynamic commands 114
- literals
  - using the question mark in transfer 194
- log record description 51
- LogConnection Statistics configuration property 54
- LogReceived SQL configuration property 54
- LogRequestStatistics configuration property 55
- LogServiceStatistics configuration property 55
- LogSvclibStatistics configuration property 52
- LogTargetActivity configuration property 57
- LogTransferStatistics configuration property 57
- LogTransformedSQL configuration property 58
- long character-string substitution
  - in select statements 113
- long transactions 94
  - description 94
- LU 6.2 configuration
  - platform-specific information 23
  - SNA mode name 24

## M

- Mainframe Client Connect (MCC)
  - description 6
  - migration information 6
- MainframeConnect
  - description 7
- @@MainframeVersion global variable 77
- managing processing 94, 104
- managing transactions 92, 94
- math functions 212, 241
- max expression 147
- MaxConnections configuration property 36
- MaxResultSize configuration property 35
  - @@MaxResultSize global variable 72
- MaxRowsReturned configuration property 36, 95
  - @@MaxRowsReturned global variable 73
- MaxSvcConnections configuration property 36
  - @@MaxSvcConnections global variable 73
- MDI Database Gateway
  - as transfer target 166
  - backward compatible application validation 32
  - backward compatible set statements, global variables, and error messages 34
- memory requirements
  - comparison of DB-Library and CT-Library cursors 118
- multiple databases
  - transferring data between 161
- multi-table views 137

## N

- native cursors 118
- net password encryption 211, 240
- Net-Gateway 155
- new features and enhancements 10
  - @@noexec global variable 77
- nonclustered components 132
- nonquoted tokens
  - transformation in sybase mode 111
- null keywords 136, 137, 146, 149, 150
  - in transfer processing 168
- null values
  - in alter table 129
  - in create table command 133



- transformations in create table command 133
- NumConvertError configuration property 43
  - during datatype conversion failure 167
  - in transfer processing 169
- @NumConvertError global variable 75
- numeric datatype errors 186

## O

- object case sensitivity 211, 240
- ODBC
  - datatypes 216
  - driver interoperability and transformation mode 108
- Open Client
  - use with Open ClientConnect 8
- Open ClientConnect
  - description 8
- open cursor command
  - error handling 125
- Open Server
  - datatype conversion for transfer processing 177, 179
  - use with Open ServerConnect 7
- Open ServerConnect
  - description 7
  - migration information 8
  - predecessors 8
  - use of APIs 7
  - use with RSPs 7
- options
  - call 143
  - cascade 144
  - grant option for 144
  - group by 146
  - logging 105
  - order by 146
  - replace 173
  - tracing 105
  - truncate 173
  - with check option 135
  - with compile 251
  - with grant option 140
  - with replace 181
  - with report 169, 172

- OR predicates 211, 240
- Oracle
  - as a transfer target 166
- Oracle hexadecimal data 194
- order by option 146, 211, 240
- overview 1

## P

- parameter markers
  - in cursor commands 119
  - in cursor open and declare commands 126
  - in dynamic commands 114
  - in insert commands 141
  - in passthrough mode 115
  - in sybase mode 111, 114
  - in updatable cursor commands 124
- parameters
  - CS\_LONGBINARY 119
  - CS\_LONGCHAR 119
  - CSPs and system procedures 208
- passthrough transformation mode
  - backward compatibility 110
  - conversion function 110
  - general information 109
- Password Expiration Manager (PEM) 244
- PasswordRequired configuration property 60
- percent sign (%) as a wildcard character 210
- performance with long transactions 94
- Period (.) as decimal delimiter 33, 62
- permission\_list 143
- placeholders
  - See qualifiers 193
- platform-specific LU 6.2 connection information
  - ConnectionSpec1 configuration property 23
- prepare transaction command 143
- primary database
  - description 162
- problems
  - performance with long transactions 94
  - troubleshooting for requests 104
- processing
  - bulk copy transfer to statements 175
  - destination-template transfer to statements 202
- processing bulk copy transfer to statements 177

### processing concepts

- request 92
- transactions 93
- unit of work 92

### processing guidelines

- for bulk copy transfer values 182

### public

- group 144

## Q

### qualifiers

- effects on Open Server datatypes during transfer 194, 196, 197
- in destination-template transfer 192, 194
- question marks as 194
- special date and time 197

### querying server connections

- using prepare transaction 143

### questions marks

- as qualifiers in destination-template transfer 194

### quick reference

- configuration properties 255, 258

### quoted\_identifier configuration property 37

### QuotedStringDelimiter configuration property 60

## R

### read-only cursor commands 119, 120

### read-only keyword 146

### REAL datatype conversion 50

### RealResults configuration property 50

### @@RealResults global variable 75

### @@RejectedRowCount global variable 77

- in transfer processing 170

### relational operators 136, 149

### remote access

- configuring SQL Server 153
- defining DirectConnet as a remote server 153

### remote LU Alias 24

### remote procedure calls (RPCs)

- commitment control 156
- event handler 155
- executing a language statement as 154

### overview 151

### rules for using language events as 156

### SQL request 157

### syntax 156

### triggers 158

### using to execute a transfer 158

### validation for using language statements as 156

### remote stored procedures (RSPs) 247, 249, 250

### creating 247

### executing 248, 249, 250

### IXF records 249

### use with Open ServerConnect 7

### using in transfer processing 200

### REMOTE\_DATATYPE value 218

### removing

- all rows from a table using truncate table command 147

- an index from a table using drop index command 137

- rows from a table using delete cursor command 135

- rows from a table using delete dynamic command 136

- rows from a table using delete language command 136

- view from the database using drop view command 138

### replace option

- in bulk copy transfer 173

### report option

- in destination-template transfer 193
- in transfer processing 169

### requests

### catalog stored procedures 89

### definition 92

### processing flow 90

### remote procedure calls 89

### set statements 89

### SQL statements 89

### troubleshooting problems 104

### types of 89

### understanding the process 89

### unit of work definitions 165

### result size maximum 35

### retrieving rows from database objects

- using select 145

revoke command 143  
 revoking  
     authorizations to access database objects 143  
     authorizations to create a database 143  
     authorizations using revoke command 143  
     stored procedures 144  
 role\_name 140, 144  
 rollback  
     based on StopCondition configuration property  
         setting 166  
     in a read-only cursor command 119  
     long transactions 94  
     short transactions 94  
     transaction command 145  
     with dynamic commands 114  
 @@RowCount global variable 77  
 rows  
     changing data in 148  
 RPC. See remote procedure calls 156  
 RSP. See remote stored procedures 247  
 rules  
     for special date and time qualifiers 197  
     using language statements as RPCs 155

**S**

sample code  
     dynamic commands 115  
     read-only cursor commands 120  
     updatable cursors 124  
 secondary database  
     description 163  
 secondaryname  
     in transfer statements 173, 193  
 select statement 145  
     as a request 90  
     in cursor commands 117  
     with create view 134  
     with TEXTPTR function 147  
 semicolon transformation in sybase mode 111  
 SendWarningMessages configuration property 38,  
     95  
     in bulk copy transfer 181  
     in transfer processing 169  
 @@SendWarningMessages global variable 73

    in transfer processing 170  
 server  
     maximum connections 36  
 server connection queries 143  
 server-side cursors 118  
 service name redirection 32  
 ServiceDescription configuration property 39  
 @@ServiceDescription global variable 73  
 @@ServiceName global variable 77  
 set Allocate command 72  
 set AllResults command 76  
 set BinaryResults command 74  
 set BulkCommitCount command 76  
 set CharConvertError command 75  
 set ClientDecimalSeparator command 72  
 set CloseOnEndtran command 76  
 set CSPCatalogQualifier command 73  
 set CSPDBName command 73  
 set CSPExclusions command 74  
 set CSPIncludeAlias command 74  
 set CSPIncludeSynonym command 74  
 set CSPIncludeSystem command 74  
 set CSPIncludeTable command 74  
 set CSPIncludeView command 74  
 set CSPQualByDBName command 74  
 set DatatypeInfo command 74  
 set DateResults command 74  
 set DateTimeConvertError command 75  
 set DateTimeResults command 74  
 set DecimalResults command 75  
 set DefaultClientCodeset command 71  
 set FloatResults command 75  
 set GraphicResults command 75  
 set Int2Results command 75  
 set Int4Results command 75  
 set keyword 148  
 set MaxResultSize command 72  
 set MaxRowsReturned command 73  
 set noexec command 77  
 set NumConvertError command 75  
 set Quoted\_Identifier command 73  
 set RealResults command 75  
 set SendWarningMessages command 73  
 set SQLTransformation command 72  
 set statements 70, 77  
     changing the transformation mode 112

## Index

- set StopCondition command 72
- set TargetDebug command 72
- set TextSize command 73
- set TimeResults command 75
- set TransactionMode command 73
- set TransferBatch command 76
- set TransferErrorCount command 76
- short transactions 93
- single quote ( ' )
  - as quoted string delimiter 60
- SIT table property 244
- SMALLINT datatype conversion 49
- SNA mode name 24
- source database
  - description 163
- sourceselectstatement 193
  - as arguments for transfer command 157
  - in bulk copy transfer 173
  - in destination-template transfer statements 201
  - in transfer processing 168
  - in transfer to statements 203
- sp\_capabilities
  - result set 211, 240
- sp\_capabilities system procedure 211, 239
  - information 211, 240
- sp\_column\_privileges catalog stored procedure 213
- sp\_column\_privileges catalog stored procedure
  - result set 214
- sp\_columns catalog stored procedure 215
  - mixed data in character strings 62
  - ODBC datatypes 216
  - REMOTE\_DATATYPE column 218
  - result set 216
  - usertype values 85
- sp\_databases catalog stored procedure 218
  - result set 219
- sp\_datatype\_info catalog stored procedure 219
  - result set 220
- sp\_fkeys catalog stored procedure 222
  - result set 223
- sp\_groups system procedure 242
  - result set 242
- sp\_helpindex as used with drop index 138
- sp\_helpserver system procedure 242
  - result set 243
- sp\_password system procedure 243
- sp\_pkeys catalog stored procedure 224
  - result set 225
- sp\_server\_info catalog stored procedure 225
  - result set 226
- sp\_special\_columns catalog stored procedure 226
  - result set 228
- sp\_sproc\_columns catalog stored procedure
  - result set 229
- sp\_sqlgetinfo
  - SQL information file 31
- sp\_sqlgetinfo system procedure 245
  - result set 245
- sp\_statistics catalog stored procedure 230
  - result set 231
- sp\_stored\_procedures catalog stored procedure 233
  - result set 233
- sp\_table\_privileges catalog stored procedure 234
  - result set 235
- sp\_tables catalog stored procedure 236
  - result set 238
- special date and time qualifiers 197
- @@spid global variable 77
- SQL commands
  - alter table 129
  - begin transaction 130
  - commit transaction 131
  - create index 131
  - create table 132
  - create view 134
  - delete cursor command 135
  - delete dynamic command 136
  - delete language command 136
  - drop table 138
  - drop view 138
  - grant 139
  - in sybase transformation mode 127, 150
  - insert dynamic command 141
  - insert language command 142
  - prepare transaction 143
  - revoke 143
  - rollback transaction 145
  - select 145
  - transformation in sybase mode 111
  - truncate table 147
  - update cursor command 148
  - update dynamic command 148

- update language command 149
  - use 150
- SQL descriptor area (SQLDA) 113
- SQL dialects 107
- SQL select statements
  - with cursor commands 117
- SQL Server
  - aggregate functions in 10.x 147
  - as a transfer target 166
  - configuring for remote access 153
  - executing stored procedures 154
- SQL syntax capability with sp\_capabilities 211, 240
- SQL syntax transformation
  - in passthrough transformation mode 110
  - in sybase transformation mode 111
- SQL transformation modes 107, 111
- SQL/DS
  - as a transfer target 166
- SQLColumnPrivileges 213
- SQLColumns 215
- SQLForeignKeys 222
- SQLGetInfo 225
- SQLGetTypeInfo 219
- SQLInformationFile configuration property 31
  - sp\_sqlgetinfo CSP 245
- SQLPrimaryKeys 224
- SQLProcedureColumns 229
- SQLProcedures 233
- SQLSpecialColumns 226
- SQLStatistics 231
- SQLTablePrivileges 234
- SQLTables 237
- SQLTransformation configuration property 61, 108
- @SQLTransformation global variable 72
- statistics
  - general statistics information 52
  - LogConnectionStatistics configuration property 54
  - LogRequestStatistics configuration property 54
  - LogServiceStatistics configuration property 55
  - LogSvclibStatistics configuration property 56
  - LogTransferStatistics configuration property 57
- StopCondition configuration property 61, 94, 95, 166
  - in transfer processing 170
- @StopCondition global variable 72
- string delimiters
  - transformation in sybase mode 111
- string functions 212, 241
- structural errors 167
  - in bulk copy transfer 181
  - in transfer processing 167
- subquery handling 213, 241
- sum aggregate function 147
- support
  - clustered and nonclustered components 132
- @SvclibDescription global variable 73
- sybase transformation mode 110
  - general information 109
  - SQL commands in 127, 150
  - syntax transformation 111
- synonyms in CSP results 29
- syntax
  - bulk copy transfer statements 172
  - destination-template transfer statements 192
  - executing catalog stored procedures and system procedures 208
  - executing RSPs 248, 249
- syntax transformation
  - in passthrough transformation mode 110
  - in sybase transformation mode 111
- SYSSERVERS table 153
- System 239
- System 10
  - cursor commands 117
  - dynamic commands 113
- system procedures 239, 245
  - coding 208, 210
  - coding examples 208
  - escape character 210
  - parameters 208
  - sp\_capabilities 211, 239
  - sp\_groups 242
  - sp\_helpserver 242
  - sp\_password 243
  - sp\_sqlgetinfo 245
  - syntax 208
  - wildcards 210
- system tables in CSP results 29

## T

- table\_name CSP parameter 209
- table\_owner CSP parameter 209
- table\_qualifier parameter 209
- tables
  - adding columns to using alter table 129
  - adding rows using insert dynamic command 141
  - adding rows using insert language command 142
  - in CSP results 29
  - removing all rows from using truncate table 147
  - removing an index from using drop index 137
  - removing from the database using drop table 138
  - removing rows from using delete cursor command 135
  - removing rows from using delete language command 136
  - removing rows from using the delete cursor command 135
- Tabular Data Stream (TDS) 115
- TargetDebug configuration property 62
- @@TargetDebug global variable 72
- TargetDecimalSeparator configuration property 62
- @@TargetDecimalSeparator global variable 72
- @@TargetError global variable 77
- TargetHasMixedData configuration property 62
- targets for transfers 166
- TCP/IP configuration
  - CICS region name 24
  - IP address 23
  - port number 24
- tempdb database 180
- teradata date format 194
- text and image handling 211, 240
- text pattern handling 211, 240
- TEXTPTR function 147
- TextSize configuration property 39
- @@TextSize global variable 73
- TIME datatype conversion 50
- TimeResults configuration property 50
- @@TimeResults global variable 75
- TIMESTAMP datatype conversion 46
- TPName configuration property 26
- TraceEvents configuration property 64
- TraceHostCom configuration property 64
- TraceInterface configuration property 64
- TraceTarget configuration property 65
- tran keyword 145
- transaction
  - handling 211, 240
  - modes 104
  - program name 26
  - program trace 62
- TransactionMode configuration property 40, 93, 96
  - effects of long setting 100
  - effects of short setting 97, 258
  - in bulk copy transfer 182
  - in transfer from statements 202
  - in transfer to statements 203
  - use with dynamic commands 114
- @@TransactionMode global variable 73
- transactions
  - commitment control using RPCs 156
  - committing 131
  - control 93, 94
  - definition 93
  - effect of begin transaction command on 104
  - effects of combined configuration property settings 97, 103
  - managing 92
  - rolling back 145
  - short 93
- transactions long 94
- transfer
  - controlling error rows during processing 170
- transfer direction 165, 193
- transfer from statements 175
  - datatype conversion for 176
  - description 165
  - in destination-template transfer 200
- transfer processing 161
  - bulk copy 171, 189
  - comparison of command types 162
  - destination database in 163
  - destination-template 191, 203
  - destination-template transfer from statements 200
  - direction 193
  - direction of 165, 172
  - error reporting 169
  - errors 167
  - general description 166
  - incompatible number of columns 168
  - increasing efficiency 193

- primary database in 163
  - secondary database in 163
  - sequential steps in bulk copy transfer 180
  - sequential steps in destination-template transfer
    - from 201
  - source database in 163
  - target database in 163
  - targets 166
  - term descriptions 162
  - unmatching columns 167
  - using datatype qualifiers in 194
  - transfer requests 90
    - arguments 157
    - creating 159
  - transfer to SQL Server
    - authorization for 180
  - transfer to statements
    - bulk copy processing 177
    - datatype conversion for 178
    - description 165
    - destination-template processing 177
    - in destination-template transfer 202
  - TransferBatch configuration property 67
    - in destination-template transfer 193
    - in transfer from statements 201
  - @@TransferBatch global variable 76
  - TransferErrorCount configuration property 67
    - in transfer processing 170
  - @@TransferErrorCount global variable 76
  - transformation
    - correlation names 147
  - transformation modes 108
    - changing 111
    - client connections 108
    - effects on functional areas 107
    - input and output 108
    - selection criteria 109
  - translation functions
    - sybase transformation mode 109
  - triggers
    - removing with table from the database 138
  - troubleshooting
    - logging options 104
    - request problems 104
  - troubleshooting options
    - tracing 105
  - TRS
    - description 4
  - truncate option
    - in bulk copy transfer 173, 181
  - truncate table command 147
  - T-SQL
    - convert functions 212, 241
    - delete/update 212, 241
    - syntax transformation 110
  - T-SQL comments
    - transformation in sybase mode 111
  - T-SQL comparison operators
    - transformation in sybase mode 111
  - TSQL0 110
  - tsql0 mode 61, 110, 248, 250, 251, 252
  - tsql1 mode 61, 248, 250, 251, 252
  - tsql2 mode 61, 250, 251, 253
  - types of commands 112, 126
    - cursor 117
    - cursor declare 125
    - cursor open 125
    - dynamic 113
    - language 112
    - read-only cursor 119
    - updatable cursor 123
- ## U
- understanding the transfer process 161
  - union handling 212, 241
  - union keyword 146
  - unit of work 92
    - definition 92
    - for bulk copy transfer 165
    - for destination-template transfer 165
    - general description 165
    - long transactions 94
    - short transactions 93
  - updatable cursors 123, 124
    - example of code 124
    - where current of clause in 124
  - update cursor command 117, 148
  - update dynamic command 148
  - update keyword 146
  - update language command 149

## Index

- use command 150
- use procedure command 248
  - with binary data clause 248
  - with data clause 249
- use request statement
  - in passthrough mode 251
- usertype 85, 86
  - finding values 85
- using
  - dynamic commands 115
  - read-only cursor commands 119
  - sybase mode commands 150
  - updatable cursors 120, 124
- using bulk copy transfer 171
- using destination-template transfer 191, 203
- using sybase mode commands 127

## V

- value errors
  - in bulk copy transfer 183
  - in transfer processing 167, 168
- values keyword 141, 142
- VARCHAR FOR BIT DATA datatype conversion 45
- VARGRAPHIC datatype conversion 49
- Version configuration property 40
- @@Version global variable 73
- views
  - adding rows 141, 142
  - distinct option 135
  - granting authorization 135
  - in CSP results 30
  - limitations 132
  - multi-table 137
  - removing from the database 138

## W

- warning messages 38, 95
- where current of clause 135
- wildcard
  - escape 212, 241
- wildcard examples 210
- with check option option 135

- with grant option option 140
- with replace option
  - in bulk copy transfer 181
- with report option
  - in bulk copy transfer 172
- work keyword 145

## X

- XNLChar configuration property 51
- XNLVarChar configuration property 51